API Gateway

User Guide

Issue 06

Date 2024-04-03





Copyright © Huawei Cloud Computing Technologies Co., Ltd. 2024. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written consent of Huawei Cloud Computing Technologies Co., Ltd.

Trademarks and Permissions

HUAWEI and other Huawei trademarks are the property of Huawei Technologies Co., Ltd. All other trademarks and trade names mentioned in this document are the property of their respective holders.

Notice

The purchased products, services and features are stipulated by the contract made between Huawei Cloud and the customer. All or part of the products, services and features described in this document may not be within the purchase scope or the usage scope. Unless otherwise specified in the contract, all statements, information, and recommendations in this document are provided "AS IS" without warranties, quarantees or representations of any kind, either express or implied.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Every effort has been made in the preparation of this document to ensure accuracy of the contents, but all statements, information, and recommendations in this document do not constitute a warranty of any kind, express or implied.

Contents

| 1 Overview | 1 |
|--|----|
| 2 API Management | 5 |
| 2.1 Creating an API Group | |
| 2.2 Importing a CCE Workload | 7 |
| 2.3 Binding a Domain Name | g |
| 2.4 Creating an Environment Variable | 11 |
| 2.5 Creating a Gateway Response | 13 |
| 2.6 Creating an API | 15 |
| 2.7 Creating a gRPC API | 33 |
| 2.8 Cloning an API | 35 |
| 2.9 CORS | 36 |
| 2.10 Debugging an API | 41 |
| 2.11 Authorizing API Access | 42 |
| 2.12 Publishing an API | 43 |
| 2.13 Taking an API Offline | 45 |
| 2.14 Importing and Exorting APIs | 45 |
| 2.14.1 Restrictions and Compatibility | 46 |
| 2.14.2 Importing APIs | 49 |
| 2.14.3 Exporting APIs | 59 |
| 2.14.4 Extended Definition | 60 |
| 2.14.4.1 x-apigateway-auth-type | 60 |
| 2.14.4.2 x-apigateway-request-type | 61 |
| 2.14.4.3 x-apigateway-match-mode | 62 |
| 2.14.4.4 x-apigateway-cors | 62 |
| 2.14.4.5 x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64 | 63 |
| 2.14.4.6 x-apigateway-any-method | 64 |
| 2.14.4.7 x-apigateway-backend | 64 |
| 2.14.4.8 x-apigateway-backend.parameters | 65 |
| 2.14.4.9 x-apigateway-backend.httpEndpoints | 67 |
| 2.14.4.10 x-apigateway-backend.httpVpcEndpoints | 67 |
| 2.14.4.11 x-apigateway-backend.functionEndpoints | 68 |
| 2.14.4.12 x-apigateway-backend.mockEndpoints | |
| 2.14.4.13 x-apigateway-backend-policies | 70 |

| 2.14.4.14 x-apigateway-backend-policies.conditions | 71 |
|--|-----|
| 2.14.4.15 x-apigateway-ratelimit | 72 |
| 2.14.4.16 x-apigateway-ratelimits | 72 |
| 2.14.4.17 x-apigateway-ratelimits.policy | 73 |
| 2.14.4.18 x-apigateway-ratelimits.policy.special | 74 |
| 2.14.4.19 x-apigateway-access-control | 75 |
| 2.14.4.20 x-apigateway-access-controls | 75 |
| 2.14.4.21 x-apigateway-access-controls.policy | 75 |
| 2.14.4.22 x-apigateway-plugins | |
| 2.15 Viewing APIs | 76 |
| 2.16 HTTP 2.0 | 77 |
| 3 API Policies | 78 |
| 3.1 Creating a Policy and Binding It to APIs | 78 |
| 3.2 CORS | 80 |
| 3.3 HTTP Response Header Management | 82 |
| 3.4 Request Throttling 2.0 | 85 |
| 3.5 Kafka Log Push | 90 |
| 3.6 Circuit Breaker | 92 |
| 3.7 Third-Party Authorizer | 98 |
| 3.8 Request Throttling | 103 |
| 3.9 Access Control | 105 |
| 3.10 Signature Keys | 107 |
| 3.11 Custom Authorizers | 109 |
| 3.12 SSL Certificates | 110 |
| 3.13 Load Balance Channels | 114 |
| 3.14 Managing Environments | 121 |
| 4 Credentials | 123 |
| 4.1 Creating a Credential and Binding It to APIs | 123 |
| 4.2 Resetting Secret | |
| 4.3 Adding an AppCode for Simple Authentication | 124 |
| 4.4 Binding a Credential Quota Policy | 126 |
| 4.5 Binding an Access Control Policy | |
| 5 Monitoring & Analysis | 128 |
| 5.1 API Monitoring | 128 |
| 5.1.1 Monitoring Metrics | 128 |
| 5.1.2 Creating Alarm Rules | 132 |
| 5.1.3 Viewing Metrics | |
| 5.2 Bandwidth Monitoring | 133 |
| 5.3 Log Analysis | 134 |
| 6 Gateway Management | 137 |
| 6.1 Buying a Gateway | |

| 6.2 Viewing or Modifying Gateway Information | 141 |
|---|-----|
| 6.3 Configuring Parameters | 143 |
| 6.4 Tag Management | 149 |
| 6.5 Managing VPC Endpoints | 149 |
| 6.6 Modifying Specifications | 151 |
| 7 SDKs | 153 |
| 8 Published API Calling | 154 |
| 8.1 Calling APIs | 154 |
| 8.2 Response Headers | 159 |
| 8.3 Error Codes | 160 |
| 9 Permissions Management | 171 |
| 9.1 Creating a User and Granting APIG Permissions | 171 |
| 9.2 APIG Custom Policies | 173 |
| 10 Auditing | 175 |
| 10.1 APIG Operations Recorded by CTS | 175 |
| 10.2 Querying Real-Time Traces | 181 |
| 11 Shared Gateway (for Existing Users) | 185 |
| 11.1 Using APIG | 185 |
| 11.2 Accessing the Shared Gateway | 188 |
| 11.3 API Group Management | 188 |
| 11.3.1 Creating an API Group | 188 |
| 11.3.2 Binding a Domain Name | 189 |
| 11.3.3 Deleting an API Group | 191 |
| 11.3.4 Adding a Gateway Response | 192 |
| 11.4 API Management | |
| 11.4.1 Creating an API | |
| 11.4.2 CORS | |
| 11.4.3 Debugging an API | 215 |
| 11.4.4 Authorizing Apps to Call an API | |
| 11.4.5 Publishing an API | 219 |
| 11.4.6 Taking an API Offline | 221 |
| 11.4.7 Deleting an API | 221 |
| 11.4.8 Importing APIs | 222 |
| 11.4.9 Exporting APIs | |
| 11.5 Request Throttling | 227 |
| 11.5.1 Creating a Request Throttling Policy | |
| 11.5.2 Deleting a Request Throttling Policy | 230 |
| 11.5.3 Adding an Excluded App or Tenant | 231 |
| 11.5.4 Removing an Excluded App or Tenant | 233 |
| 11.6 Access Control | 234 |

| 11.6.1 Creating an Access Control Policy | 234 |
|---|-----|
| 11.6.2 Deleting an Access Control Policy | 236 |
| 11.7 Environment Management | 237 |
| 11.7.1 Creating an Environment and Environment Variable | 237 |
| 11.7.2 Deleting an Environment | 240 |
| 11.8 Signature Key Management | 240 |
| 11.8.1 Creating and Using a Signature Key | 240 |
| 11.8.2 Deleting a Signature Key | 243 |
| 11.9 VPC Channel Management | 244 |
| 11.9.1 Creating a VPC Channel | 244 |
| 11.9.2 Deleting a VPC Channel | 247 |
| 11.9.3 Editing Health Check Configurations | 247 |
| 11.9.4 Editing Cloud Server Configurations of a VPC Channel | 249 |
| 11.10 Custom Authorizers | 250 |
| 11.10.1 Creating a Custom Authorizer | 250 |
| 11.10.2 Deleting a Custom Authorizer | 253 |
| 11.11 Monitoring | 253 |
| 11.11.1 APIG Metrics | 253 |
| 11.11.2 Creating Alarm Rules | 255 |
| 11.11.3 Viewing Metrics | 255 |
| 11.12 App Management | 256 |
| 11.12.1 Creating an App and Obtaining Authorization | 256 |
| 11.12.2 Deleting an App | 257 |
| 11.12.3 Resetting the AppSecret of an App | 258 |
| 11.12.4 Adding an AppCode for Simple Authentication | 258 |
| 11.12.5 Viewing API Details | 260 |
| 11.13 SDKs | 260 |
| 11.14 Purchased APIs | 261 |
| 11.15 Calling Published APIs | 263 |
| 11.15.1 Calling APIs | 263 |
| 11.15.2 Response Headers | 265 |
| 11.15.3 Error Codes | 266 |
| 11.16 Key Operations Recorded by CTS | 273 |
| 11.16.1 APIG operations that can be recorded by CTS | 274 |
| 11 16 2 Viewing Audit Logs | 277 |

APIG is a fully managed service that enables you to securely build, manage, and deploy APIs at any scale with high performance and availability. With APIG, you can easily integrate your internal service systems and selectively expose and monetize your service capabilities.

NOTICE

APIG provides dedicated gateways and shared gateway (for existing users). For details about how to use dedicated gateways, see API Management to Auditing. The shared gateway has been brought offline and can be used only by existing users. For details, see **Shared Gateway (for Existing Users)**.

General Procedure

The following figure shows the procedure for using APIG to host APIs.

Figure 1-1 APIG API providers



You can expose your API services or obtain and call APIs of others through

Exposing APIs

Enterprises or developers selectively expose and monetize their services and data through APIG.

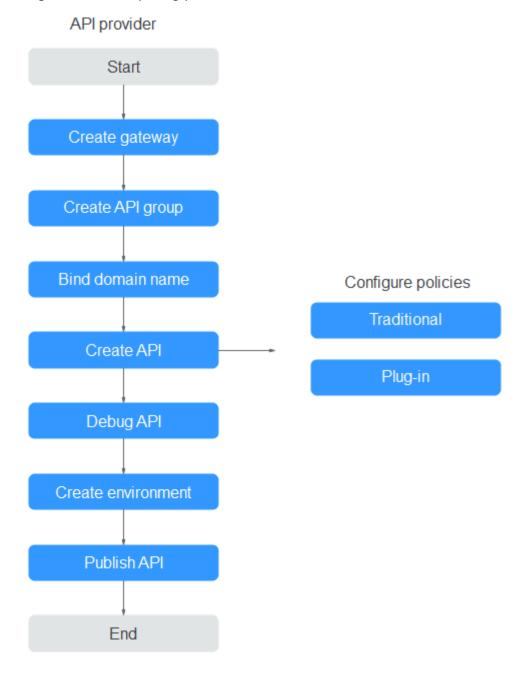


Figure 1-2 API exposing process

1. Create a gateway.

A gateway is an independent resource space where all operations are performed. Resources of different gateways are isolated from each other.

2. Create an API group.

Each API belongs to an API group. Create an API group before creating an API.

3. Bind a domain name.

Before exposing an API, bind an independent domain name to the target group so that API callers can access the API.

You can debug the API using the debugging domain name allocated to the group to which the API belongs. The domain name can be accessed a maximum of 1000 times every day.

4. Create an API.

Encapsulate existing backend services into standard RESTful APIs and expose them to external systems.

After creating an API, configure the following settings to control API access:

Traditional policies

Request throttling

Request throttling controls the number of times an API can be called within a time period to protect backend services.

Access control

Set a blacklist or whitelist to deny or allow API access from specific IP addresses or accounts.

Signature keys

Signature keys are used by backend services to verify the identity of APIG.

- Plug-in policies

CORS

This policy provides the capabilities of specifying preflight request headers and response headers and automatically creating preflight request APIs for cross-origin API access.

HTTP Response Header Management

You can customize HTTP response headers that will be contained in an API response.

Request Throttling 2.0

This policy enables you to limit the number of times an API can be called within a specific time period. Parameter-based, basic, and excluded throttling is supported.

Kafka Log Push

This policy pushes API calling logs to Kafka so that users can easily obtain them.

Circuit Breaker

This policy protects your backend service when a performance issue occurs.

Third-Party Authorizer

You can configure your own service to authenticate API requests.

5. Debug the API.

Verify whether the API is working normally.

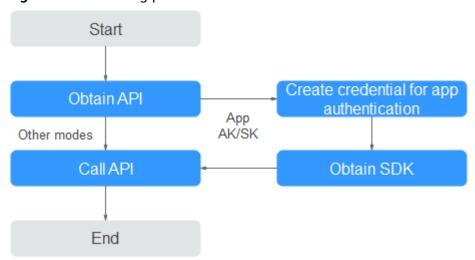
Publish the API.

The API can be called only after it has been published in an environment.

Calling APIs

Enterprises and developers obtain and call APIs of other providers, thereby reducing development time and costs.

Figure 1-3 API calling process



1. Obtain an API.

Obtain the API request information, including the domain name, protocol, method, path, and authentication mode.

2. Create a credential.

For an API that uses app authentication, create a credential to generate a credential ID and key/secret pair. Bind the credential to the API so that you can call the API through app authentication.

3. Obtain an SDK.

Use the SDK to generate a signature for the AK/SK and call the API.

4. Call the API.

Call the API using its access address and perform authentication based on its authentication mode.

2 API Management

2.1 Creating an API Group

An API group contains APIs used for the same service. You can manage APIs by group, and must create a group before creating an API.

You can create an API group using the following methods:

- Creating an API Group Directly
 - You can create APIs for the group as required.
- Importing an API Design File
 - Import an API file to create a group.
- Importing a CCE Workload
 - By importing Cloud Container Engine (CCE) workloads, you can open up your CCE service capabilities. For details, see Importing a CCE Workload.

- To make your APIs available for users to access, bind independent domain names to the group to which the APIs belong.
- Each API can belong to only one group.
- The system automatically allocates a subdomain name to each API group for internal
 testing. The subdomain name can be accessed 1000 times a day. You can also disable
 the Debugging Domain Name switch. When disabled, the debugging domain name
 is hidden and APIs cannot be called through it.
- API group **DEFAULT** is automatically generated for each gateway. APIs in this group can
 be called using the IP address of the Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) where the gateway is
 deployed.

Prerequisites

You have created a gateway.

Creating an API Group Directly

Step 1 Go to the **APIG console**.

- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Choose **Create API group** > **Create Directly**, and enter group information.

Table 2-1 Group information

| Parameter | Description | |
|-------------|-------------------------------|--|
| Name | API group name. | |
| Description | Description of the API group. | |

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

Importing an API Design File

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Choose **Create API Group > Import API Design File**.
- **Step 5** Select an API file and click **Open**.
- **Step 6** Set the import parameters.

Table 2-2 Parameters for importing APIs

| Parameter | Description | |
|-------------------------------------|---|--|
| Import | Options: | |
| | • New group : Import APIs to a new API group. If you select this option, the system automatically creates an API group and imports the APIs into this group. | |
| | • Existing group: Import APIs to an existing API group. If you select this option, the system adds the APIs to the selected API group while retaining the existing APIs in the API group. | |
| API group | Select an API group if you set Import to Existing group . | |
| Basic Definition | Determine whether to overwrite an existing API if the name of the API is the same as that of an imported API. | |
| Overwrite | This parameter is available only if you set Import to Existing group. | |
| Extended Definition Overwrite | If this option is selected, the extended definition items (access control and request throttling policies) of an imported API will overwrite the existing policies with the same name. | |

Step 7 (Optional) To configure the APIs, click **Configure Global Settings**.

- 1. Change the authentication mode. For details, see 5.2.
- 2. Modify the backend request configuration. For details, see **Step 1**.
- Click Next. You can view the configuration details in form, JSON, or YAML format.
- 4. Confirm the settings and click **Submit**.

Step 8 Click **Import Now**, and determine whether to publish the APIs.

- **Now**: Publish the APIs in a specified environment now.
- Later: Publish the APIs later.
- **Step 9** Click **OK**. The **APIs** tab is displayed, showing the imported APIs.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After an API group is created, **bind independent domain names** to it so that API callers can use them to call open APIs in the group.

2.2 Importing a CCE Workload

By importing Cloud Container Engine (CCE) workloads, you can open your CCE service capabilities through APIs.

□ NOTE

If your gateway does not support CCE workload import, contact customer service.

Precautions

- Only CCE Turbo clusters and CCE clusters using the VPC network model are supported.
- The CCE cluster and your gateway must be in the same VPC or otherwise connected.
- If you select a CCE cluster that uses a VPC network model, add the container CIDR block of the cluster to **Routes** on the gateway details page.
- After the import, APIs will be generated, together with a microservice load balance channel that monitors and updates address changes of all pods in the workload.

Prerequisites

You have created a **CCE workload**.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.

- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Choose **Create API Group** > **Import CCE Workload**. Set the parameters according to the following table.

Table 2-3 Parameter description

| Parameter | Description | | |
|---------------------|--|--|--|
| Group | Group to which the CCE workload belongs. You can create a group or select an existing group. | | |
| Cluster | Select a cluster. Click View CCE Console to view the available clusters. | | |
| Namespace | Namespace to which the workload will belong. A namespace is an abstract collection of resources and objects. | | |
| Workload Type | Deployment: Deployments do not store any data or status while they are running. StatefulSet: StatefulSets store data and statuses while they are running. DaemonSet: DaemonSets ensure that only one pod runs on all or some nodes. When a node is added to a cluster, a new pod is also added for the node. When a node is removed from a cluster, the pod is also reclaimed. If a DaemonSet is deleted, all pods created by it will be deleted. For details about these workload types, see Overview. | | |
| Service Label Key | Pod label of a workload. The service label name is the pod label key | | |
| Service Label Value | and the service label value is the pod label value. For details about pod labels, see Labels and Annotations . | | |
| Tag | Pod label of a workload. If a workload cannot be identified by certain service label name and value, select another pod label to specify the workload. | | |
| Protocol | HTTP and HTTPS are supported. HTTPS is recommended for transmitting important or sensitive data. | | |
| Request Path | You can use a plus sign (+) for prefix matching. For example, /a/{b+}. | | |
| Port | Listening port of the CCE workload. | | |
| Authentication Mode | App and IAM authentication is supported. You can also choose not to authenticate requests. App: Requests will be authenticated by APIG. This authentication mode is recommended. IAM: Requests will be authenticated by IAM. | | |
| | None: No authentication will be required. | | |

| Parameter | Description | | |
|--------------|---|--|--|
| CORS | Determine whether to enable cross-origin resource sharing (CORS). | | |
| | CORS allows browsers to send XMLHttpRequest to servers in other domains, overcoming the limitation that Asynchronous JavaScript and XML (AJAX) can be used only within the same domain. | | |
| | There are two types of CORS requests: | | |
| | Simple requests: requests that have the Origin field in the header. | | |
| | Not-so-simple requests: HTTP requests sent before the actual request. | | |
| | If CORS (not-so-simple request) is enabled for an API, another API that uses the OPTIONS method must be created. For details, see Enabling CORS . | | |
| Timeout (ms) | Backend request timeout. | | |
| | If a backend timeout error occurs during API debugging, increase the timeout to locate the reason. | | |
| | NOTE Modify the maximum timeout by referring to Configuring Parameters. The value range is 1 ms to 600,000 ms. | | |

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

Related Documents

Selectively Exposing CCE Workloads with a Dedicated Gateway

2.3 Binding a Domain Name

Before exposing APIs, bind independent domain names to the group to which the APIs belong, so that API callers can access these APIs. The APIs can also be accessed using the debugging domain name allocated to the group.

- Debugging domain name (previously called "subdomain name"): The system automatically allocates a unique debugging domain name to each API group for internal testing. The domain name can be accessed 1000 times a day, and it cannot be modified.
- Independent domain name: You can add five custom domain names for API callers to call your open APIs. There is no limit on the number of times these domain names can be accessed.

□ NOTE

- Groups under the same gateway cannot be bound with a same independent domain name.
- By default, the debugging domain name of an API group can only be resolved to a server in the same VPC as the gateway. If you want to resolve the domain name to a public network, bind an EIP to the gateway.
- If the independent domain name you select is a wildcard domain name (for example, *.aaa.com), you can use any of its subdomain names (for example, default.aaa.com and 1.aaa.com) to access all APIs in the group to which the domain name is bound.

Prerequisites

- 1. There is an independent domain name available.
- 2. An A record points the independent domain name to the **address** of the gateway. For details, see **Adding an A Record Set**.
- 3. If the API group contains HTTPS APIs, **create an SSL certificate** for the independent name.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- Step 4 Click a group name.
- **Step 5** Click the **Group Information** tab.
- **Step 6** In the **Independent Subdomain Names** area, click **Bind Independent Domain Name**. Then configure the domain name information.

Table 2-4 Independent domain name configuration

| Parameter | Description | |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|
| Domain Name | Domain name to be bound to the API group. | |
| Minimum TLS Version | The minimum TLS version that can be used to access the domain name. TLS 1.1 and TLS 1.2 (recommended) are supported. | |
| | This parameter applies only to HTTPS and does not take effect for HTTP and other access modes. Configure HTTPS cipher suites using the ssl_ciphers parameter on the Parameters tab. | |
| HTTP-to-HTTPS Auto Redirection | HTTP-to-HTTPS auto redirection can be enabled for independent domain names. | |

Step 7 Click OK.

If the domain name is no longer needed, click **Unbind Domain Name** to unbind it from the API group.

- **Step 8** (Optional) If the API group contains HTTPS APIs, bind an SSL certificate to the independent domain name.
 - 1. In the row that contains the domain name, click **Select SSL Certificate**.
 - 2. Select an SSL certificate and click **OK**.
 - If a CA certificate has been uploaded for the SSL certificate, client authentication (HTTPS two-way authentication) is enabled by default.
 - If no SSL certificate is available, click Create SSL Certificate to create one. For details, see SSL Certificates.

----End

Troubleshooting

- Failure in binding an independent domain name: It already exists or is not CNAMEd to the debugging domain name of the API group.
- Failure in binding an SSL certificate: The domain name used to generate the SSL certificate is different from the target independent domain name.

HTTP-to-HTTPS Auto Redirection

Gateways created after November 30, 2022 support HTTP-to-HTTPS auto redirection.

Constraints

Redirection is only suitable for GET and HEAD requests. Redirecting other requests may cause data loss due to browser restrictions.

Conditions for enabling redirection:

- The frontend request protocol is set to HTTPS or HTTP&HTTPS (see Creating an API).
- An independent domain name and SSL certificate have been bound to the API group to which the API belongs. For details, see the preceding descriptions in this section

After binding an independent domain name to the API group, enable **HTTP-to-HTTPS Auto Redirection** for the domain name.

Follow-Up Operations

After binding independent domain names to the API group, create APIs in the group to selectively expose backend capabilities. For details, see **Creating an API**.

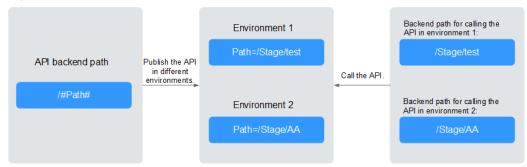
2.4 Creating an Environment Variable

You can define environment variables to allow an API to be called in different environments.

Environment variables are manageable and specific to environments. You can add variables in different environments to call different backend services using the same API.

For variables you define during API creation, you must create corresponding variables and values. For example, variable **Path** is defined for an API, and two variables with the same name are created and assigned values **/Stage/test** and **/Stage/AA** in environments 1 and 2, respectively. If the API is published and called in environment 1, the path **/Stage/test** is used. If the API is published and called in environment 2, the path **/Stage/AA** is used.

Figure 2-1 Use of environment variables



Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Click a group name.
- **Step 5** Click the **Group Information** tab.
- **Step 6** In the **Environment Variables** area, select an environment. If no environment is available, click **Create Environment** to create one.
- **Step 7** Click **Add Environment Variable** and enter the variable information.

NOTICE

Environment variable names and values will be displayed in plain text in API requests. Do not include sensitive information in the variable names and values.

Table 2-5 Adding an environment variable

| Parameter | Description | |
|-----------|--|--|
| Name | Variable name. Ensure that the name is the same as the name of the variable defined for the API. | |
| Value | The path to be used in the selected environment. | |

Step 8 Click OK.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After creating an environment variable, you can **publish the API in the environment where the variable is located** so that the API can be called.

2.5 Creating a Gateway Response

A gateway response is displayed if APIG fails to process an API request. APIG provides a set of default responses and also allows you to create responses with custom status codes and content. The response content must be in JSON format.

For example, the content of a default gateway response is as follows:

```
{"error_code": "$context.error.code", "error_msg": "$context.error.message", "request_id": "$context.requestId"}
```

You can add a response with the following content:

```
{"errorcode": "$context.error.code", "errormsg": "$context.error.message", "requestid": "$context.requestid", "apild": "$context.apild"}
```

You can add more fields to or delete existing fields from the JSON body.

◯ NOTE

- You can create a maximum of four gateway responses for each group.
- A maximum of 10 response headers can be customized. The key of a response header can contain 1 to 128 characters, including digits, letters, and underscores (_). The value can reference runtime variables (see Context Variables), but cannot contain double brackets ([[or]]).
- The type of a default or custom response cannot be modified, but the status code and content of the response can.
- The type of a gateway response cannot be changed. For details, see Response Types.
- Gateway responses can contain the API gateway context variables (starting with \$context). For details, see Context Variables.

Procedure

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Click a group name.
- **Step 5** Click the **Group Information** tab.
- **Step 6** In the **Gateway Responses** area, create or modify gateway responses.

To cancel modifications to a default response, click **Restore Defaults** in the upper right.

----End

Response Types

The following table lists the response types supported by APIG. You can define status codes to meet your service requirements.

Table 2-6 Error response types supported by APIG

| Response Name | Default | Description |
|--|----------------|---|
| | Status Code | |
| Access Denied | 403 | Access denied. For example, the access control policy is triggered or an attack is detected. |
| Authorizer Configuration Error | 500 | A custom authorizer error has occurred. For example, communication failed or an error response was returned. |
| Authorizer Failed | 500 | The custom authorization failed. |
| Incorrect Identity Source | 401 | The identity source of the custom authorizer is missing or invalid. |
| Third-Party Configuration Error | 500 | A third-party authorizer error has occurred. For example, communication failed or an error response was returned. |
| Third-Party Authorizer Failure | 401 | The third-party authorizer returns an authentication failure. |
| Incorrect Third- Party Identity Source | 401 | The identity source of the third-party authorizer is missing. |
| Authentication Failure | 401 | IAM or app authentication failed. |
| Identity Source Not Found | 401 | No identity source has been specified. |
| Backend Timeout | 504 | Communication with the backend service timed out. |
| Backend Unavailable | 502 | The backend service is unavailable due to communication error. |
| Default 4XX | - | Another 4XX error occurred. |
| Default 5XX | - | Another 5XX error occurred. |
| No API Found | 404 | No API is found. |
| Incorrect Request Parameters | 400 | The request parameters are incorrect or the HTTP method is not supported. |
| Request Throttled | 429 | The request was rejected due to request throttling. |

| Response Name | Default Status Code | Description |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|---|
| Unauthorized Credential | 401 | The credential you are using has not been authorized to call the API. |

Context Variables

Table 2-7 Variables that can be used in response message body

| Variable | Description |
|---|--|
| \$context.apild | API ID. |
| \$context.apiName | API name. |
| \$context.appld | ID of the credential that calls the API. |
| \$context.appName | Name of the credential that calls the API. |
| \$context.requestId | Request ID generated when the API is called. |
| \$context.stage | Deployment environment in which the API is called. |
| \$context.sourcelp | Source IP address of the API caller. |
| \$context.reqPath | API request path, excluding the query string. |
| \$context.reqUri | API request path, including the query string. |
| \$context.reqMethod | Request method. |
| \$context.authorizer.fronten d.property | Values of the specified attribute-value pairs mapped to the context in the frontend custom authorizer response |
| \$context.authorizer.backend .property | Values of the specified attribute-value pairs mapped to the context in the backend custom authorizer response |
| \$context.error.message | Error message. |
| \$context.error.code | Error code. |
| \$context.error.type | Error type. |

2.6 Creating an API

You can selectively expose your backends by configuring their APIs in APIG. To create an API, perform the following steps:

Configuring Frontend Settings

Frontend definitions, security settings, and request parameters

Configuring Backend Settings

Default backend, backend policies, and responses

• (Optional) Creating a Policy

Traditional and plug-in policies

□ NOTE

APIG uses a REST-based API architecture, so API opening and calling must comply with related RESTful API specifications.

Prerequisites

- You have created an API group. If no API group is available, create one by referring to Creating an API Group.
- If the backend service needs to use a load balance channel, create a channel first.
- If you need to use a custom authorizer for API authentication, create one.

Configuring Frontend Settings

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- Step 4 Click a group name.
- **Step 5** On the **APIs** tab, click **Create API** > **Create API**.
 - 1. Configure the frontend parameters described in the following table.

□ NOTE

The new API must have a different group, request method, request path, and matching mode from those of any existing API.

Table 2-8 Frontend definition

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| API Name | Enter an API name that conforms to specific rules to facilitate search. |
| Group | The group to which the API belongs. |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| URL | Frontend address, which consists of a method, protocol, subdomain name, and path. - Method: Select GET, POST, DELETE, PUT, PATCH, HEAD, OPTIONS, or ANY. ANY indicates that the API can be called using any method. |
| | Protocol: Select HTTP, HTTPS, or HTTP&HTTPS. HTTPS is recommended for transmitting important or sensitive data. APIG supports WebSocket data transmission. HTTP is equivalent to WebSocket (ws), and HTTPS is equivalent to WebSocket Secure (wss). |
| | Subdomain Name: Debugging domain name of the group to which the API belongs. |
| | Path: Path for requesting the API. Enclose parameters in braces. For example: /a/{b}. Or use a plus sign (+) to match parameters starting with specific characters. For example: /a/{b+}. The path is case-sensitive. |
| Gateway Response | Displayed if an API request fails to be processed. |
| | APIG provides a set of default responses and also allows you to create new ones with custom status codes and content on the Group Information page. The response content must be in JSON format. |
| Matching | Options: |
| | Exact match: The API can be called only using the specified request path. |
| | Prefix match: The API can be called using paths starting with the matching characters. For example, if you set the request path to / test/AA and the matching mode to Prefix match, the API can be called using /test/AA/CC but cannot be called using /test/AACC. |
| | NOTE |
| | If you set the matching mode to Prefix match, the characters of the API request path excluding the prefix are transparently transmitted to the backend. For example, if you define the frontend and backend request paths of an API as /test/ and /test2/, respectively, and the API is called using /test/AA/CC, the characters AA/CC will be transparently transmitted to the backend. The request URL received by the backend is /test2/AA/CC/. |
| | - If there are two APIs with the same group, request method, and request path, the API with exact matching is first called. |
| Tags | Attributes used to quickly identify the API from other APIs. |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Base64 encoding | Enabled by default to Base64-encode the body of API requests for interacting with FunctionGraph. Base64 encoding works only when any of the following conditions is met: |
| | - A custom authorizer is used. |
| | - The backend type is FunctionGraph. |
| | A circuit breaker policy is bound, using FunctionGraph for backend downgrade. |
| | You can disable Base64 encoding only when the content format is application/json. |
| Description | Description of the API. |
| Content Format Type | Available for Method set to POST , PUT , or ANY . |
| | Enable to specify a content format for API requests. APIG will transmit API requests to the backend by using the selected format. The options include application/json, application/xml, text/plain, and multipart/form-data. The selected content format must be supported by the backend service. |
| Body | Available for Method set to POST , PUT , PATCH , or ANY . |
| | Enter the description of the request body in the API request to help API callers understand how to correctly encapsulate API requests. |

2. Configure security settings based on the following table.

Table 2-9 Security configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| Visibility | Determine whether the API is available to the public. Options: |
| | - Public |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|---|
| Authentication Mode | The following authentication modes are available: |
| | App: Requests for the API will be authenticated by APIG. App authentication is recommended. |
| | IAM: Requests for the API will be authenticated by Identity and Access Management (IAM). |
| | Custom: Requests for the API will be authenticated by using your own authentication system or service (for example, an OAuth-based authentication system). |
| | - None : No authentication will be required. |
| | API calling varies depending on the authentication mode. For details, see Calling APIs . |
| | NOTICE |
| | If you set the authentication mode to IAM or None, any APIG user can access the API, which can result in excessive charges if the API is bombarded with malicious requests. |
| | If you set the authentication mode to Custom, you can create a function in FunctionGraph to interconnect with your own authentication system or service. Ensure that FunctionGraph is available in the current region. |
| Simple Authentication | This parameter is available only if you set Security Authentication to App . |
| | If you select app authentication, configure whether to enable simple authentication. In simple authentication, the X-Apig-AppCode parameter is added to the HTTP request header for quick response. APIG verifies only the AppCode and the request content does not need to be signed. |
| | Simple authentication only supports HTTPS requests and does not support HTTP requests. For details, see Adding an AppCode for Simple Authentication. |
| | NOTE After you enable simple authentication for an existing API, you need to publish the API again. For details, see Publishing an API. |
| Two-Factor Authentication | This parameter is available only if Authentication Mode is set to App or IAM . |
| | Determine whether to enable two-factor authentication for the API. If this option is enabled, API requests will be authenticated using a custom authorizer in addition to the app or IAM authentication you specify. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| Custom Authorizer | This parameter is mandatory only if Authentication Mode is set to Custom . |
| | If no custom authorizer is available, click Create Custom Authorizer to create one. |
| CORS | Determine whether to enable cross-origin resource sharing (CORS). |
| | CORS allows browsers to send XMLHttpRequest to servers in other domains, overcoming the limitation that Asynchronous JavaScript and XML (AJAX) can be used only within the same domain. |
| | There are two types of CORS requests: |
| | Simple requests: requests that have the Origin field in the header. |
| | Not-so-simple requests: HTTP requests sent before the actual request. |
| | If CORS (not-so-simple request) is enabled for an API, another API that uses the OPTIONS method must be created. For details, see Enabling CORS . |

3. (Optional) Define request parameters described in the following table.

Table 2-10 Request parameter configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| Parameter Name | Request parameter name. The name of a path parameter will be automatically displayed in this column. NOTE |
| | The parameter name is case-insensitive. It cannot start with x-apig- or x-sdk |
| | – The parameter name cannot be x-stage . |
| | If you set the parameter location to HEADER, ensure that the parameter name is not Authorization or X- Auth-Token and does not contain underscores (_). |
| Parameter Type | Options: STRING and NUMBER. NOTE Set the type of Boolean parameters to STRING. |
| Required | Determine whether the parameter is required in each request sent to call the API. If you select Yes , API requests that do not contain the parameter will be rejected. |
| Passthrough | Determine whether to transparently transmit the parameter to the backend service. |

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Enumerated Value | Enumerated value of the parameter. Use commas (,) to separate multiple enumerated values. The value of this parameter can only be one of the enumerated values. |
| Default Value | The value that will be used if no value is specified for the parameter when the API is called. If the parameter is not specified in a request, APIG automatically sends the default value to the backend service. |
| Value Restrictions | Max. length/Max. value: If Parameter Type is set to STRING, set the maximum length of the parameter value. If Parameter Type is set to NUMBER, set the maximum parameter value. |
| | Min. length/Min. value: If Parameter Type is set to STRING, set the minimum length of the parameter value. If Parameter Type is set to NUMBER, set the minimum parameter value. |
| Example | Example value for the parameter. |
| Description | Description of the parameter. |

Step 6 Click Next to proceed with Configuring Backend Settings.

----End

Configuring Backend Settings

APIG allows you to define multiple backend policies for different scenarios. Requests that meet specified conditions will be forwarded to the corresponding backend. For example, you can have certain requests to an API forwarded to a specific backend by specifying the source IP address in the policy conditions of the backend.

You can define a maximum of five backend policies for an API in addition to the default backend.

Step 1 Define the default backend.

API requests that do not meet the conditions of any backend will be forwarded to the default backend.

On the **Backend Configuration** page, select a backend type.

APIG supports **HTTP&HTTPS**, **FunctionGraph**, and **Mock** backends. For details about the parameters required for defining each type of backend service, see **Table 2-11**, **Table 2-12**, and **Table 2-13**.

□ NOTE

- FunctionGraph backends can be set only if FunctionGraph has been deployed in the current environment.
- If the backend service is unavailable, use the Mock mode to return the expected result to the API caller for debugging and verification.

Table 2-11 Parameters for defining an HTTP&HTTPS backend service

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Load Balance Channel | Determine whether to use a load balance channel to access the backend service. If you select Configure , ensure that you have created a load balance channel . |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| URL | A URL consists of a method, protocol, load balance channel/backend address, and path. |
| | Method Select GET, POST, DELETE, PUT, PATCH, HEAD, OPTIONS, or ANY. ANY indicates that all request methods are supported. |
| | Protocol HTTP or HTTPS. HTTPS is recommended for transmitting important or sensitive data. NOTE |
| | APIG supports WebSocket data transmission. HTTP is equivalent to WebSocket (ws), and HTTPS is equivalent to WebSocket Secure (wss). |
| | This protocol must be the one used by the backend service. |
| | Load Balance Channel (if applicable) Select a load balance channel. |
| | NOTE To ensure a successful health check and service availability, configure the security groups of cloud servers in each channel to allow access from 100.125.0.0/16. |
| | Backend Address (if applicable) Set this parameter if no load balance channel is used. |
| | Enter the access address of the backend service in the format of <i>Host:Port. Host</i> indicates the IP address or domain name for accessing the backend service. If no port is specified, port 80 is used for HTTP by default, and port 443 is used for HTTPS by default. |
| | To use environment variables in the backend address, enclose the variables with number signs (#), for example, #ipaddress#. You can use multiple environment variables, for example, #ipaddress##test#. |
| | NOTE Gateways created after October 30, 2022 can transmit server name indication (SNI) to backend services during TLS handshake. |
| | Path The request path (URI) of the backend service. Ensure that any parameters in the path are enclosed in braces ({}). For example, /getUserInfo/{userId}. |
| | If the path contains an environment variable, enclose the environment variable in number signs (#), for example, /#path#. You can use multiple environment variables, for example, /#path##request#. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Host Header (if applicable) | Set this parameter only if a load balance channel is used. Define a host header for requests to be sent to cloud servers associated with the load balance channel. By default, the original host header in each request is used. |
| Timeout (ms) | Backend request timeout. Range: 1–60,000 ms. If a backend timeout error occurs during API debugging, increase the timeout to locate the reason. NOTE If the current timeout does not meet your service requirements, modify the maximum timeout by referring to Configuring Parameters. The value range is 1 ms to 600,000 ms. After modifying the maximum timeout, also modify the timeout here. |
| Retries | Number of attempts to retry requesting the backend service. Default: -1; range: -1 to 10. If the value is -1, the retry function is disabled. However, requests except for those using POST and PATCH will be retried once by default. If the value is within 0 to 10, the retry function is enabled, and requests will retry for the specified number of times. 0 indicates no retry attempts will be made. If a load balance channel is used, the number of retries must be less than the number of enabled backend servers in the channel. |
| Two-Way Authentication | Set this parameter only when Protocol is set to HTTPS. Determine whether to enable two-way authentication between APIG and the backend service. If you enable this option, configure the backend_client_certificate parameter on the Parameters page of the gateway. |
| Backend Authentication | Determine whether your backend service needs to authenticate API requests. If you enable this option, select a custom authorizer for backend authentication. Custom authorizers are functions that are created in FunctionGraph to implement an authentication logic or to invoke an authentication service. NOTE Backend authentication relies on FunctionGraph and is only available in certain regions. |

Table 2-12 Parameters for defining a FunctionGraph backend service

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Function Name | Automatically displayed when you select a function. |
| Function URN | Identifier of the function. Click Select to specify a function. |
| Version/Alias | Select a function version or alias. For details, see sections "Managing Versions" and "Managing Aliases" in the <i>FunctionGraph User Guide</i> . |
| Invocation Mode | • Synchronous : When receiving an invocation request, FunctionGraph immediately processes the request and returns a result. The client closes the connection once it has received a response from the backend. |
| | Asynchronous: The function invocation results of client requests do not matter to clients. When it receives a request, FunctionGraph queues the request, returns a response, and then processes requests one by one in idle state. |
| Timeout (ms) | Timeout duration for APIG to request for the backend service. For details, see the description about backend timeout in Table 2-11. |
| | NOTE If the function network architecture is set to V1, the maximum timeout is 60,000 ms. If the network architecture is set to V2, the maximum timeout is 600,000 ms and can be modified by using the gateway parameter backend_timeout. |
| Backend Authentication | For details, see the description about backend authentication in Table 2-11. |

Table 2-13 Parameters for defining a Mock backend service

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Status Code | Select the HTTP status code to be returned by the API. |
| Response | You can use Mock for API development, debugging, and verification. It enables APIG to return a response without sending the request to the backend. This is useful if you need to test APIs when the backend is unavailable. |
| Backend Authentication | For details, see the description about backend authentication in Table 2-11. |
| Add Header | Customize the response header parameters for the API. Click Add Header , and enter the parameter name, value, and description. |

□ NOTE

- APIs whose URLs contain variables cannot be debugged on the API debugging page.
- For variables defined in URLs of APIs, corresponding environment variables and their
 values must be configured. Otherwise, the APIs cannot be published because there will
 be no values that can be assigned to the variables.
- The variable name is case-sensitive.
- **Step 2** (Optional) Configure backend parameters to map them to the request parameters defined in corresponding locations. If no request parameter is defined in **5.3**, skip this step.
 - In the Backend Parameters area, add parameters in either of the following ways:
 - Click Import Request Parameter to synchronize all defined request parameters.
 - Click **Add Backend Parameter Mapping** to add a backend parameter.
 - 2. Modify mappings (see **Figure 2-2**) based on the parameters and their locations in backend requests.

Figure 2-2 Configuring backend parameters



- a. If the parameter location is set to **PATH**, the parameter name must be the same as that defined in the backend request path.
- b. The name and location of a request parameter can be different from those of the mapped backend parameter.

MOTE

- The parameter name is case-insensitive. It cannot start with **x-apig-** or **x-sdk-**.
- The parameter name cannot be x-stage.
- If you set the parameter location to **HEADER**, ensure that the parameter name does not start with an underscore (_).
- c. In the preceding figure, parameters test01 and test03 are located in the path and query positions of API requests, and their values will be received in the header of backend requests. test02 is located in the header of API requests, and its value will be received through test05 in the path of backend requests.

Assume that test01 is aaa, test02 is bbb, and test03 is ccc.

The API request is as follows:

curl -ik -H 'test02:bbb' -X GET https://example.com/v1.0/aaa?test03=ccc

Backend request:

curl -ik -H 'test01:aaa' -H 'test03:ccc' -X GET https://example.com/v1.0/bbb

Step 3 (Optional) Configure constant parameters for the default backend to receive constants that are invisible to API callers. When sending a request to the backend service, APIG adds these parameters to the specified locations in the request and then sends the request to the backend service.

In the Constant Parameters area, click Add Constant Parameter.

NOTICE

Constant parameters will be stored as plaintext. To prevent information leakage, do not contain sensitive information in these parameters.

Table 2-14 Constant parameter configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| Constant Parameter Name | If Parameter Location is set to PATH , the parameter name must be the same as that in Path . |
| | NOTE |
| | The parameter name is case-insensitive. It cannot be x-stage or start with x-apig- or x-sdk- |
| | If Parameter Location is set to HEADER, the parameter name is case-insensitive and cannot start with an underscore (_). |
| Parameter Location | Specify the location of the constant parameter in backend service requests. The options include PATH , HEADER , and QUERY . |
| Parameter Value | Value of the constant parameter. |
| Description | Description about the constant parameter. |

◯ NOTE

- APIG sends requests containing constant parameters to a backend service after percentencoding of special parameter values. Ensure that the backend service supports percentencoding. For example, parameter value [api] becomes %5Bapi%5D after percentencoding.
- For values of path parameters, APIG percent-encodes the following characters: ASCII codes 0–31 and 127–255, spaces, and other special characters ?></%#"[\]^`{|}
- For values of query strings, APIG percent-encodes the following characters: ASCII codes 0-31 and 127-255, spaces, and other special characters >=<+&%#"[\]^`{|}
- **Step 4** (Optional) Configure system parameters for the default backend to receive default gateway parameters, frontend authentication parameters, and backend authentication parameters. When sending a request to the backend service, APIG adds these parameters to the specified locations in the request and then sends the request to the backend service.
 - 1. In the **System Parameters** area, click **Add System Parameter**.

Table 2-15 System parameter configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|---|
| System Parameter Type | Options: - Default gateway parameter : Parameters supported by APIG. |
| | Frontend authentication parameter: Parameters to be displayed in the frontend custom authentication result. This option is available only if you have set Authentication Mode to Custom or enabled Two-Factor Authentication in Configuring Frontend Settings. |
| | Backend authentication parameter: Parameters to be displayed in the backend custom authentication result. This option is available only if you have enabled backend authentication in Configuring Backend Settings. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| System Parameter Name | Name of the system parameter. - If System Parameter Type is Default gateway parameter, select any of the following parameters. |
| | ■ sourceIp: source IP address of an API caller |
| | stage: environment in which the API is called |
| | ■ apild: ID of the API |
| | ■ appId: ID of the app that calls the API |
| | requestId: request ID generated when the API is called |
| | • serverAddr: IP address of the gateway server |
| | • serverName: name of the gateway server |
| | handleTime: processing time of the API request |
| | providerAppId: credential ID of the API provider |
| | apiName: name of the API. This parameter is available only after the API is published. |
| | appName: name of the credential used to call the API |
| | - If System Parameter Type is Frontend authentication parameter or Backend authentication parameter, enter a parameter that has been defined for custom authentication results. For details about how to create a custom authorizer |
| | function and obtain result parameters, see Developer Guide. |
| Backend Parameter Name | Name of a backend parameter to map the system parameter. NOTE - The parameter name is case-insensitive. It cannot be x-stage or start with x-apig- or x-sdk- - If Parameter Location is set to HEADER, the parameter name is case-insensitive and cannot start with an underscore (_). |
| Backend Parameter Location | Specify the location of the backend parameter in backend service requests. The options include PATH , HEADER , and QUERY . |

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Description | Description about the system parameter. |

Step 5 (Optional) Add a backend policy.

You can add backend policies to forward requests to different backend services.

- 1. Click $^{\bigodot}$ to add a backend policy.
- 2. Set policy parameters described in **Table 2-16**. For details about other parameters, see **Table 2-11**, **Table 2-12**, and **Table 2-13**.

Table 2-16 Backend policy parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Name | The backend policy name. |
| Effective Mode | Any condition met: The backend policy takes effect if any of the policy conditions has been met. |
| | All conditions met: The backend policy takes effect only when all the policy conditions have been met. |
| Policy Conditions | Conditions that must be met for the backend policy to take effect. Set conditions by referring to Table 2-17 . |

Table 2-17 Policy condition configuration

| Parameter | Description | | |
|--------------------|---|--|--|
| Source | Source IP address: IP address from which the API is called | | |
| | Request parameter: a request parameter defined for the API | | |
| | - Cookie: cookies of an API request | | |
| | System parameter - Default gateway parameter: a default gateway parameter used to define system runtime for the API | | |
| | System parameter - Frontend authentication parameter: displayed in the frontend custom authentication result This option is available only if you have set Authentication Mode to Custom or enabled Two-Factor Authentication in Configuring Frontend Settings. | | |
| | NOTICE | | |
| | The request parameters (for example, headers) set as policy conditions must have already been defined for the API. | | |
| | If System parameter is not displayed, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway. | | |
| Parameter Name | When setting Source to Request parameter , select a request parameter. | | |
| | When setting Source to System parameter , select a system parameter. | | |
| | • reqPath: Request URI, for example, /a/b/c. | | |
| | reqMethod: Request method, for example, GET. | | |
| | When setting Source to Cookie , enter the name of a cookie parameter. | | |
| Parameter Location | The parameter location is displayed only if you set Source to Request parameter . | | |
| Condition Type | This parameter is required only if you set Source to Request parameter , System parameter , or Cookie . | | |
| | Equal: The request parameter must be equal to the specified value. | | |
| | Enumerated: The request parameter must be equal to any of the enumerated values. | | |
| | Matching: The request parameter must be equal to any value of the regular expression. | | |
| | When you set Source to System parameter and select a parameter named reqMethod , you can set the condition type only to Equal or Enumerated . | | |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|---|
| Condition Value | If Condition Type is Equal, enter a value. |
| | If Condition Type is Enumerated, enter multiple values and separate them with commas (,). |
| | If Condition Type is Matching, enter a value range, for example, [0-5]. |
| | If Source is Source IP address, enter one or more IP addresses and separate them with commas (,). |
| | If Source is System parameter - Frontend authentication parameter and the condition value is of the Boolean type, the parameter must be in lowercase. |

Step 6 Defining responses.

In the **Responses** area, set the example responses.

Table 2-18 Defining responses

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Example Success Response | The response to be returned when the API is called successfully. |
| Example Failure Response | The response to be returned when the API fails to be called. |

Step 7 Click Finish. You can view the API details on the APIs tab that is displayed.

----End

(Optional) Creating a Policy

You can create policies for the API after publishing it.

- Step 1 On the APIs tab, click Create Policy.
- **Step 2** Select a policy type and set parameters.
 - Select existing policy
 - Create new policy (see Creating a Policy and Binding It to APIs)
- Step 3 Click OK.

----End

FAQs About API Creation

Does APIG Support Multiple Backend Endpoints?

What Are the Possible Causes If a Backend Service Fails to Be Invoked or the Invocation Times Out?

Why Am I Seeing the Message "No backend available"?

Follow-Up Operations

After creating an API, verify it by following the procedure in **Debugging an API**.

2.7 Creating a gRPC API

APIG supports gRPC API creation. gRPC is a modern, open-source, high-performance Remote Procedure Call (RPC) framework that can run in any environment. You only need to define the request and response of each API, and let the gRPC framework take care of the rest. gRPC uses protocol buffers (protobuf) as its Interface Definition Language (IDL) and for bottom-layer message exchange. The following table compares gRPC and REST APIs.

Table 2-19 gRPC vs REST

| Item | gRPC | REST |
|---|---|--|
| Messa ge encodi ng | protobuf | JSON |
| Trans missio n protoc ol | HTTP/2 | НТТР |
| Trans missio n perfor manc e | Fast, with less content to transmit | More content to transmit |
| Trans missio n mode | Unary RPC Send a single request and receive a single response. Server streaming RPC Send a single request and receive a single response. Client streaming RPC Send multiple requests and receive a single response. Bidirectional streaming RPC Send multiple requests and receive multiple requests and receive multiple responses. | Send a single request and receive a single response. |

If both your client and server are of the gRPC type, you can create an gRPC API to open up your backend capabilities. gRPC features low resource consumption and high transmission rate. It is suitable for internal service invocation and governance.

Restrictions

- gRPC APIs cannot be imported, exported, or debugged, and do not support the import of API design files, CSE microservices, or CCE workloads.
- Circuit breaker policies whose backend policy type is **Mock**, **HTTP&HTTPS**, or **FunctionGraph** are not supported.

Prerequisites

- You have created an API group. If no API group is available, create one by referring to **Creating an API Group**.
- If the backend service needs to use a load balance channel, **create a channel** first.
- The backend service has a proto file that defines API request and response parameters. The proto file is used in gRPC to define data structures and service APIs. It describes data structures and interactions using protobuf and serves as a contract for communication between the client and server.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Click a group name.
- **Step 5** On the **APIs** tab page, choose **Create API** > **Create gRPC API**.
- **Step 6** Configure the frontend definition according to **5.1**.

For gRPC APIs, the default frontend request method is **POST** and the protocol is **GRPCS**.

Set the path to any of the following:

- •
- |{Package name}.{Service name}
- |{Package name}.{Service name}|{Method name}

- Obtain the package name, service name, and method name from the proto file.
- Absolute match can be used only when the frontend path is set to *|{Package name}, {Service name}|{Method name}|*.
- Base64 encoding is not supported.
- **Step 7** Configure the authentication mode by referring to **5.2**.
- Step 8 Click Next.

Step 9 Configure the default backend by referring to **Step 1**.

The backend service type of gRPC APIs can be **GRPC&GRPCS** or **FunctionGraph**.

- When the type is **GRPC&GRPCS**, the backend service uses the **POST** request method, / path, and **GRPC** or **GRPCS** protocol, and does not support parameter orchestration.
- When the type is FunctionGraph, the backend service uses V2 network architecture and Synchronous invocation type by default, and does not support parameter orchestration.

□ NOTE

gRPC APIs with a FunctionGraph backend are supported in CN Southwest-Guiyang1, CN East-Shanghai1, CN North-Beijing4, CN East-Shanghai2, and LA-Santiago.

Step 10 (Optional) Add a backend policy by referring to **Step 5**.

----End

(Optional) Creating a Policy

You can create policies for the API after publishing it.

- Step 1 On the APIs tab, click Create Policy.
- **Step 2** Select a policy type and set parameters.
 - Select existing policy
 - Create new policy (see Creating a Policy and Binding It to APIs)

Step 3 Click OK.

----End

Related Documents

Routing gRPC Service Requests

2.8 Cloning an API

To improve API creation efficiency, you can clone an API with a custom name and path.

Policies bound to an API cannot be cloned and can only be manually bound to the new API.

Prerequisites

You have created an API. If no API is available, create one by referring to **Creating** an API.

Procedure

Step 1 Go to the APIG console.

- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- Step 4 Click a group name.
- **Step 5** On the **APIs** tab, choose **More** > **Clone**.
- **Step 6** Set the API name and path, and click **OK**.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

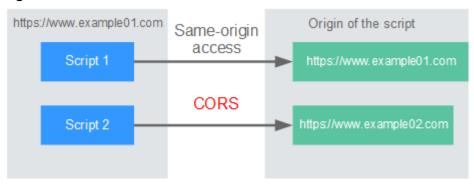
After cloning an API, verify it by following the procedure in **Debugging an API**.

2.9 CORS

What Is CORS?

For security reasons, browsers restrict cross-origin requests initiated from within scripts. This means that a web application can only request resources from its origin. The CORS mechanism allows browsers to send XMLHttpRequest to servers in other domains and request access to the resources there.

Figure 2-3 Process flow of the CORS mechanism



There are two types of CORS requests:

• Simple requests

Simple requests must meet the following conditions:

- a. The request method is HEAD, GET, or POST.
- b. The request header contains only the following fields:
 - Accept
 - Accept-Language
 - Content-Language
 - Last-Event-ID

Content-Type (application/x-www-form-urlencoded, multipart/ form-data, or text/plain)

In the header of a simple request, browsers automatically add the **Origin** field to specify the origin (including the protocol, domain, and port) of the request. After receiving such a request, the target server determines whether the request is safe and can be accepted based on the origin. If the server sends a response containing the **Access-Control-Allow-Origin** field, the server accepts the request.

Not-so-simple requests

Requests that do not meet the conditions for simple requests are not-so-simple requests.

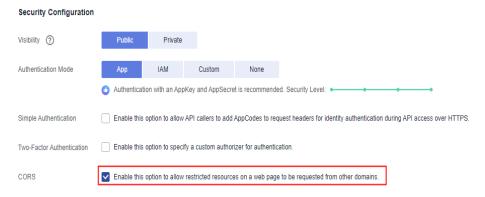
Before sending a not-so-simple request, browsers send an HTTP preflight request to the target server to confirm whether the origin the web page is loaded from is in the allowed origin list, and to confirm which HTTP request methods and header fields can be used. If the preflight request is successful, browsers send simple requests to the server.

Configuring CORS

CORS is disabled by default. To enable CORS for an API, perform the operations described in this section. To customize request headers, request methods, and origins allowed for cross-domain access, create a CORS plug-in policy by referring to CORS.

• Simple CORS requests

When creating an API, enable CORS in the **Security Configuration** area of the **Create API** page. For more information, see **Simple Request**.



• Not-so-simple CORS requests

NOTICE

If your API will receive not-so-simple requests, **create another API that will be accessed using the OPTIONS method** in the same group as the target API to receive preflight requests.

Follow this procedure to define the preflight request API. For more information, see **Not-So-Simple Request**.

- a. In the **Frontend Definition** area, set the following parameters:
 - Method: Select OPTIONS.
 - Protocol: The same protocol used by the API with CORS enabled.
 - Path: Enter a slash (/).

Figure 2-4 Defining the API request



b. In the **Security Configuration** area, select **None** and enable **CORS**.

Figure 2-5 None authentication



c. Select the **Mock** backend type.

Figure 2-6 Mock backend service

Backend Configuration



Simple Request

When creating an API that will receive simple requests, enable CORS for the API.

Scenario 1: If CORS is enabled and the response from the backend does not contain a CORS header, APIG handles requests from any domain, and returns the **Access-Control-Allow-Origin** header. For example:

Request sent by a browser and containing the Origin header field:

GET /simple HTTP/1.1
Host: www.test.com
Origin: http://www.cors.com
Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded; charset=utf-8
Accept: application/json
Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT

Origin: This field is required to specify the origin (http://www.cors.com in this example) of the request. APIG and the backend service determine based on the origin whether the request is safe and can be accepted.

Response sent by the backend service:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

{"status":"200"}

Response sent by APIG:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

X-Request-Id: 454d689fa69847610b3ca486458fb08b

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *

{"status":"200"}

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: This field is required. The asterisk (*) means that APIG handles requests sent from any domain.

Scenario 2: If CORS is enabled and the response from the backend contains a CORS header, the header will overwrite that added by APIG. The following messages are used as examples:

Request sent by a browser and containing the Origin header field:

GET /simple HTTP/1.1

Host: www.test.com

Origin: http://www.cors.com

Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded; charset=utf-8

Accept: application/json

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT

Origin: This field is required to specify the origin (http://www.cors.com in this example) of the request. APIG and the backend service determine based on the origin whether the request is safe and can be accepted.

Response sent by the backend service:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: http://www.cors.com

{"status":"200"}

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: Indicates that the backend service accepts requests sent from http://www.cors.com.

Response sent by APIG:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT

Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

X-Request-Id: 454d689fa69847610b3ca486458fb08b Access-Control-Allow-Origin: http://www.cors.com

{"status":"200"}

The CORS header in the backend response overwrites that in APIG's response.

Not-So-Simple Request

When creating an API that will receive not-so-simple requests, enable CORS for the API by following the instructions in **Configuring CORS**, and create another API that will be accessed using the OPTIONS method.

If you use the CORS plug-in policy for an API, you do not need to create another API that uses the OPTIONS method.

The request parameters of an API accessed using the OPTIONS method must be set as follows:

- **Group**: The same group to which the API with CORS enabled belongs.
- Method: Select OPTIONS.
- **Protocol**: The same protocol used by the API with CORS enabled.
- Path: Enter a slash (/) or select the path that has been set for or matches the API with CORS enabled.
- **Security Authentication**: Select **None**. No authentication is required for requests received by the new API no matter which security authentication mode has been selected.
- CORS: Enable this option.

The following are example requests and responses sent to or from a mock backend.

Request sent from a browser to an API that is accessed using the OPTIONS method:

OPTIONS /HTTP/1.1 User-Agent: curl/7.29.0 Host: localhost Accept: */* Origin: http://www.cors.com Access-Control-Request-Method: PUT Access-Control-Request-Headers: X-Sdk-Date

- **Origin**: This field is required to specify the origin from which the request has been sent.
- Access-Control-Request-Method: This field is required to specify the HTTP methods to be used by the subsequent simple requests.
- Access-Control-Request-Headers: This field is optional and used to specify the additional header fields in the subsequent simple requests.

Response sent by the backend: none

Response sent by APIG:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 02:38:48 GMT

Content-Type: application/json Content-Length: 1036

Content-Length: 1036 Server: api-gateway

X-Request-Id: c9b8926888c356d6a9581c5c10bb4d11

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *

Access-Control-Allow-Headers: X-Stage,X-Sdk-Date,X-Sdk-Nonce,X-Proxy-Signed-Headers,X-Sdk-Content-Sha256,X-Forwarded-For,Authorization,Content-Type,Accept,Accept-Ranges,Cache-Control,Range Access-Control-Expose-Headers: X-Request-Id,X-Apig-Latency,X-Apig-Upstream-Latency,X-Apig-RateLimit-Api,X-Apig-RateLimit-User,X-Apig-RateLimit-App,X-Apig-RateLimit-Ip,X-Apig-RateLimit-Api-Allenv

Access-Control-Allow-Methods: GET,POST,PUT,DELETE,HEAD,OPTIONS,PATCH Access-Control-Max-Age: 172800

- Access-Control-Allow-Origin: This field is required. The asterisk (*) means that APIG handles requests sent from any domain.
- Access-Control-Allow-Headers: This field is required if it is contained in the request. It indicates all header fields that can be used during cross-origin access
- Access-Control-Expose-Headers: This is the response header fields that can be viewed during cross-region access.
- Access-Control-Allow-Methods: This field is required to specify which HTTP request methods the APIG supports.
- Access-Control-Max-Age: This field is optional and used to specify the length of time (in seconds) during which the preflight result remains valid. No more preflight requests will be sent within the specified period.

Request sent by a browser and containing the Origin header field:

PUT /simple HTTP/1.1 Host: www.test.com Origin: http://www.cors.com

Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded; charset=utf-8

Accept: application/json

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT

Response sent by the backend:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway {"status":"200"}

Response sent by APIG:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

X-Request-Id: 454d689fa69847610b3ca486458fb08b

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *

{"status":"200"}

2.10 Debugging an API

After creating an API, debug it on the APIG console by setting HTTP headers and body to verify whether the API is running normally.

□ NOTE

- APIs with backend request paths containing variables cannot be debugged.
- If an API has been bound with a request throttling policy, the policy will not work during debugging of the API.
- The maximum backend timeout is 60s for API debugging.

Prerequisites

You have set up the backend service of the API.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Click a group name.
- **Step 5** On the **APIs** tab, select the target API and click **Debug**.
- **Step 6** Configure the URL and request parameters of the API.

Select a request method, protocol, and domain name, and set request parameters.

Select the debugging or an independent domain name. If you select a wildcard domain name, specify the subdomain name.

If the independent domain name you select is a wildcard domain name, you can use any of its subdomain names to access all APIs in the group to which the domain name is bound.

For example, if a wildcard domain name is *.aaa.com, the subdomain name can be default.aaa.com or 1.aaa.com.

Step 7 Click Debug.

- **Step 8** The box on the lower right displays the response of the API request.
 - If the debugging is successful, an HTTP status code starting with **2** and response details are displayed.
 - If the request fails to be sent, an HTTP status code 4xx or 5xx is displayed. For details, see Error Codes.
- **Step 9** You can send more requests with different parameters and values to verify the API.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After the API is successfully debugged, **publish** the API in a specific environment so that the API can be called by users. To ensure security, **create policies** for the API.

2.11 Authorizing API Access

APIs using app authentication can only be called by credentials that have been authorized to call them.

NOTICE

- You can authorize credentials only to call APIs that use app authentication.
- A credential can be authorized to access a maximum of 1000 APIs.

Prerequisites

- You have published an API.
- You have created an environment.
- You have created a credential.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management > API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Click a group name.
- **Step 5** On the **APIs** tab, select the target API and choose **More** > **Authorize Credentials**.
- Step 6 Click Select Credentials.
- **Step 7** Select an environment, search for and select desired credentials, and click **OK**. The authorized credentials are displayed on the **Authorize Credentials** page.

To cancel the authorization of a credential, click **Cancel Authorization** in the **Operation** column that contains the credential.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After you authorize a credential for an API, the API can be called by the credential using SDKs of different programming languages.

2.12 Publishing an API

APIs can be called only after they have been published in an environment. You can publish APIs in different environments. APIG allows you to view the publication history (such as the version, description, time, and environment) of each API, and supports rollback of APIs to different historical versions.

□ NOTE

- If you modify a published API, you must publish it again for the modifications to take effect in the environment in which the API has been published.
- A maximum of 10 publication records of an API are retained in an environment.

Prerequisites

You have created an environment.

Publishing an API

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Click a group name.
- **Step 5** On the **APIs** tab, select the target API and click **Publish Latest Version**.
- **Step 6** Select the environment where the API will be published, and enter a description.

□ NOTE

- If the API has already been published in the environment, publishing it again will overwrite its definition in that environment.
- If there is no environment that meets your requirements, create a new one.
- **Step 7** Click **OK**. After the API is published, the red exclamation mark (!) in the upper left corner of the **Publish Latest Version** button disappears.

You can remove APIs from the environments where they have been published. This operation will cause the APIs to be inaccessible in the environments. Ensure that you have notified users before this operation. To remove an API, click **Take Offline**.

----End

Viewing Publication History

- **Step 1** On the **APIs** tab, select the target API.
- **Step 2** Choose **More** > **View Publishing Records**.
- **Step 3** Click **View Details** in the **Operation** column of a version.

The **View Details** dialog box displays the basic information, frontend and backend request information, input and constant parameters, parameter mappings, and example responses of the API.

Step 4 To roll back the API to a historical version, click **Switch Version** in the row containing the target version, and click **Yes**.

If "current version" is displayed next to the target version, the rollback was successful.

When the API is called, configuration of the current version is used instead of the previously saved configuration.

For example, an API was published in the RELEASE environment on August 1, 2018. On August 20, 2018, the API was published in the same environment after modification. If the version published on August 1 is set as the current version, configuration of this version will be used when the API is called.

----End

FAQs About API Publishing

Do I Need to Publish an API Again After Modification?

Why Can't APIs Published in a Non-RELEASE Environment Be Accessed?

Can I Invoke Different Backend Services by Publishing an API in Different Environments?

2.13 Taking an API Offline

You can remove APIs that you do not need from the environments where the APIs have been published.

NOTICE

This operation will cause the APIs to be inaccessible in the environments. Ensure that you have notified users before this operation.

Prerequisites

- You have created an API group and API.
- You have published the API.

Procedure

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Click the name of the target API group.
 - To take one API offline, select the API, and click Take Offline in the upper right.
 - To take multiple APIs (≤ 1000) offline, click **Batch**, select the APIs, and click the Take Offline icon.
- **Step 5** Select the environment from which you want to take the API offline, and click **Yes**.
 - ----End

Follow-Up Operations

After taking an API offline, delete it to release resources.

2.14 Importing and Exorting APIs

2.14.1 Restrictions and Compatibility

Note the following restrictions and compatibility issues when importing or exporting APIs on APIG:

Restrictions

- APIG parameter restrictions:
 - APIG does not support the configuration of request parameters in the formData and body locations.
 - APIG does not support the configuration of parameters consumes and produces.
 - The names of header parameters are not case-sensitive.
- Backend policy restrictions are as follows:
 - Default backend type HTTP: The HTTP and HTTP-VPC backends are supported.
 - Default backend type HTTP-VPC: The HTTP and HTTP-VPC backends are supported.
 - Default backend type **function**: Only the function backend is supported.
 - Default backend type mock: Only the mock backend is supported.

Compatibility

• OpenAPI is supported.

The OpenAPI Specification (OAS) defines a standard, language-agnostic interface to RESTful APIs. OAS is formerly known as Swagger. APIG supports two OpenAPI specifications: Swagger 2.0 and OpenAPI 3.0. For easy understanding, in the following sections, OAS refers to OpenAPI Specification (including Swagger 2.0 and OpenAPI 3.0), Swagger refers to Swagger 2.0, and OpenAPI refers to OpenAPI 3.0.

- Mappings between imported or exported OAS objects and APIG's objects
- Differences in request parameter types
- Differences in API request path template syntax
- Extended fields supported for APIG when importing APIs

Table 2-20 Mappings between OAS objects and APIG's objects

| Swagger Object | OpenAPI Object (3.0.0) | APIG Object | Import | Export |
|----------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|---|--|
| info.title | info.title | API group name | Importing to a new API group: a new API group name Importing to an existing API group: not used An API group name consists of 3–64 characters, starting with a letter. Only letters, digits, and underscores (_) are allowed. | API group name |
| info.descri ption | info.desc ription | API group descripti on | Importing to a new API group: description about the new group Importing to an existing API group: not used | API group description |
| info.versio n | info.versi on | Version | Not used | User-defined version The current time is used as the API group name if no name is specified. |
| host | server.url | API group domain name | Not used | The first user- defined domain name of an API group is preferentially used. The independent domain name of the API group is used if the API group is not bound with any user-defined domain names. |
| basePath | - | - | Merged with the request path of each API | Not used |

| Swagger Object | OpenAPI Object (3.0.0) | APIG Object | Import | Export |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|---|---|
| paths.pat h | paths.pa th | API request path | Merged with basePath to use as an API request path | API request path |
| operation. operationI d | operatio n.operati onId | API name | API name | API name |
| operation. descriptio n | operatio n.descrip tion | API descripti on | API description | API description |
| operation. paramete rs | operatio n.param eters | API frontend request paramet ers | API request parameters | API request parameters |
| operation. schemes | - | API frontend request protocol | API request protocol | API request protocol |
| operation. responses | operatio n.respon ses | - | Not used | Default response |
| operation. security | operatio n.securit y | API authenti cation mode | API authentication mode Used together with x-apigateway-auth-type | API authentication mode Used together with x-apigateway-auth-type |

Table 2-21 Differences in request parameter types

| OAS | APIG | Supported Attribute |
|---------|--------|---------------------|
| integer | number | maximum |
| long | | minimum |
| float | | default |
| double | | enum |
| | | required |
| | | description |

| OAS | APIG | Supported Attribute |
|--------|--------|---|
| string | string | maxLength minLength default enum required description |
| Other | None | None |

Table 2-22 Differences in API request path template syntax

| Syntax | OASSwagger | APIG |
|---|---------------|---|
| /users/{userName} | Supported | Supported |
| /users/prefix-{userName} /users/{userName}-suffix | Supported | Not supported for frontend request definition |
| /users/prefix-{userName} - suffix | | Supported for backend request definition |
| /users/{proxy+} | Not supported | Supported for frontend request definition |
| | | Not supported for backend request definition |

2.14.2 Importing APIs

You can import Swagger and OpenAPI APIs to a **new** or **existing** API group on APIG. Before importing APIs, complete the **extended definition** of APIG.

Precautions for Importing APIs to a New Group

When you import APIs to a new API group, the system creates an API group.

This function is suitable for importing new APIs to APIG.

Before importing APIs, ensure that the following requirements are met:

- Your API group and API quotas are sufficient.
- Use the **title** property in Swagger info and OpenAPI info to specify an API group name. The name of a new API group cannot be the same as that of an existing one.

- If a conflict exists when you import APIs, the former API is imported successfully and the latter API cannot be imported. For example, if two APIs with the same name or request path exist in the imported API definition, a success message is displayed for the first imported API, and a failure message is displayed for the API to be imported subsequently.
- If **Extended Definition Overwrite** is selected, the extended definition items (access control and request throttling policies) of an imported API will overwrite the existing extended definition items with the same name.
- Imported APIs will not be automatically published in an environment. You can choose to publish them immediately or later.

Precautions for Importing APIs to an Existing Group

When you import APIs to a specified API group, the system adds them to the API group while retaining the existing APIs.

This function is suitable for importing new or modified APIs to an existing API group.

Before importing APIs, ensure that the following requirements are met:

- Your API quota is sufficient.
- If the definition of an API you are importing is the same as that of an existing API, you can overwrite the existing API or retain it. If you leave the existing API alone, the new API will not be imported.
- If **Extended Definition Overwrite** is selected, the extended definition items (access control and request throttling policies) of an imported API will overwrite the existing extended definition items with the same name.
- Imported APIs will not be automatically published in an environment. You can choose to publish them immediately or later.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Choose **API Management** > **APIs**.
- Step 4 Click Import APIs. For details, see Importing an API Design File.

You can also import APIs to APIG by referring to the following examples:

- Importing an HTTP Backend Service API
- Importing an HTTP VPC Backend Service API
- Importing a Function Backend Service API
- Importing a Mock Backend Service API

----End

Importing an HTTP Backend Service API

Import the request parameter definition of an HTTP backend service API that uses the GET method and is accessed through IAM authentication.

Swagger example:

```
swagger: "2.0"
info:
 title: "importHttpEndpoint10"
 description: "import apis" version: "1.0"
host: "api.account.com"
paths:
 '/http/{userId}':
  get:
    operationId: "getUser3"
    description: "get user by userId"
    - apig-auth-iam: []
    schemes:
    - https
    parameters:
    - name: "test"
     description: "authorization token"
     type: "string"
     in: "header"
     required: true
    - name: "userId"
     description: "user id"
     type: "string"
     in: "path"
     required: true
    responses:
      "200":
       description: "user information"
    x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
    x-apigateway-cors: true
    x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64: true
    x-apigateway-match-mode: "NORMAL"
    x-apigateway-backend:
type: "HTTP"
     parameters:
      - name: "userId"
value: "userId"
       in: "query"
       origin: "REQUEST"
       description: "user id"
      - name: "X-Invoke-User"
       value: "apigateway"
       in: "header'
       origin: "CONSTANT"
       description: "invoke user"
     httpEndpoints:
      address: "example.com" scheme: "http"
       method: "GET"
       path: "/users"
       timeout: 30000
securityDefinitions:
 apig-auth-app:
  in: header
  name: Authorization
  type: apiKey
  x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
 apig-auth-iam:
  in: header
  name: unused
  type: apiKey
  x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM
```

OpenAPI example:

```
openapi: 3.0.0 info:
```

```
title: importHttpEndpoint10
 version: '1.0'
servers:
 - url: >-
    http://abc.com
 - url: >-
   https://abc.com
paths:
 '/http/{userId}':
  get:
    description: get user by userId
    operationId: getUser3
    parameters:
     - description: authorization token
      example: "
      in: header
      name: test
      required: true
      schema:
       maxLength: 0
       maximum: 0
       minimum: 0
       type: string
      x-apigateway-pass-through: always
     - description: user id
      example: "
      in: path
      name: userId
      required: true
      schema:
       maxLength: 0
       maximum: 0
       minimum: 0
       type: string
      x-apigateway-pass-through: always
    responses:
     default-cors:
      description: response example
      x-apigateway-result-failure-sample: "
      x-apigateway-result-normal-sample: "
    security:
     - apig-auth-iam: []
    servers:
     - url: >-
       https://abc.com
    x-apigateway-backend:
     httpEndpoints:
      address: example.com
      description: "
      enableClientSsl: false
      method: GET
      path: /users
      retryCount: '-1'
      scheme: http
      timeout: 30000
     parameters:
       - description: invoke user
       in: HEADER
       name: X-Invoke-User
       origin: CONSTANT
       value: apigateway
      - description: user id
       in: QUERY
       name: userId
       origin: REQUEST
       value: userId
     type: HTTP
    x-apigateway-cors: true
    x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64: true
```

```
x-apigateway-match-mode: NORMAL
   x-apigateway-request-type: public
   x-apigateway-response: default
components:
 responses:
  default-cors:
   description: response example
   headers:
     Access-Control-Allow-Origin:
      schema:
       default: '*'
       type: string
 securitySchemes:
  apig-auth-app:
   in: header
   name: Authorization
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
  apig-auth-app-header:
   in: header
   name: Authorization
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-opt:
     appcode-auth-type: header
   x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
  apig-auth-iam:
   in: header
   name: unused
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM
 x-apigateway-responses:
  default: {}
```

Importing an HTTP VPC Backend Service API

Import the request parameter definition of an HTTP VPC backend service API that uses the ANY method and is accessed through app authentication.

Swagger example:

```
swagger: "2.0"
info:
 title: "importHttpVpcEndpoint"
 description: "import apis"
 version: "1.0"
host: "api.account.com"
paths:
 '/http-vpc':
  x-apigateway-any-method:
    operationId: "userOperation"
    description: "user operation resource"
   security:
    - apig-auth-app: []
    schemes:
    - https
    parameters:
    - name: "Authorization"
     description: "authorization signature"
     type: "string"
     in: "header"
     required: true
    responses:
     "default":
      description: "endpoint response"
    x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
    x-apigateway-cors: true
    x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64: true
    x-apigateway-match-mode: "SWA"
```

```
x-apigateway-backend:
     type: "HTTP-VPC"
     parameters:
     - name: "X-Invoke-User"
value: "apigateway"
       in: "header"
       origin: "CONSTANT"
       description: "invoke user"
     httpVpcEndpoints:
       name: "userVpc"
       scheme: "http"
method: "GET"
       path: "/users"
       timeout: 30000
securityDefinitions:
 apig-auth-app:
  in: header
  name: Authorization
  type: apiKey
  x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
 apig-auth-iam:
  in: header
  name: unused
  type: apiKey
  x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM
```

OpenAPI example:

```
openapi: 3.0.0
info:
 description: import apis
 title: importHttpVpcEndpoint
 version: '1.0'
servers:
 - url: >-
   http://abc.com
 - url: >
   https://abc.com
paths:
 /http-vpc:
  x-apigateway-any-method:
    description: user operation resource
    operationId: userOperation
    parameters:
     - description: authorization signature
      example: "
      in: header
      name: Authorization
      required: true
      schema:
        maxLength: 0
        maximum: 0
        minimum: 0
        type: string
      x-apigateway-pass-through: always
    responses:
     default-cors:
      description: response example
      x-apigateway-result-failure-sample: "
      x-apigateway-result-normal-sample: "
    security:
     - apig-auth-app: []
    servers:
     - url: >-
        https://abc.com
    x-apigateway-backend:
     httpVpcEndpoints:
      cascade_flag: false
      description: "
      enableClientSsl: false
```

```
method: GET
      name: userVpc
      path: /users
      retryCount: '-1'
      scheme: http
      timeout: 30000
     parameters:
      - description: invoke user
       in: HEADER
       name: X-Invoke-User
       origin: CONSTANT
       value: apigateway
     type: HTTP-VPC
   x-apigateway-cors: true
   x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64: true
   x-apigateway-match-mode: SWA
   x-apigateway-request-type: public
components:
 responses:
  default-cors:
   description: response example
   headers:
     Access-Control-Allow-Origin:
      schema:
       default: '*'
       type: string
 securitySchemes:
  apig-auth-app:
   in: header
   name: Authorization
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
  apig-auth-app-header:
   in: header
   name: Authorization
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-opt:
     appcode-auth-type: header
   x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
  apig-auth-iam:
   in: header
   name: unused
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM
 x-apigateway-responses: {}
```

Importing a Function Backend Service API

Import the request parameter definition of a FunctionGraph backend service API that uses the GET method and is accessed through IAM authentication.

Swagger example:

```
swagger: "2.0"
info:
    title: "importFunctionEndpoint"
    description: "import apis"
    version: "1.0"
host: "api.account.com"
paths:
    '/function/{name}':
    get:
        operationId: "invokeFunction"
        description: "invoke function by name"
        security:
        - apig-auth-iam: []
        schemes:
        - https
```

```
parameters:
    - name: "test"
     description: "authorization token"
     type: "string"
     in: "header'
     required: true
    - name: "name"
     description: "function name"
     type: "string"
     in: "path"
     required: true
    responses:
     "200":
      description: "function result"
    x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
    x-apigateway-cors: true
    x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64: true
    x-apigateway-match-mode: "NORMAL"
    x-apigateway-backend:
     type: "FUNCTION"
     parameters:
     name: "functionName"
value: "name"
      in: "query"
      origin: "REQUEST"
      description: "function name"
     - name: "X-Invoke-User"
      value: "apigateway"
      in: "header"
      origin: "CONSTANT"
      description: "invoke user"
     functionEndpoints:
      function-urn: "your function urn address"
      version: "your function version"
      invocation-type: "async"
      timeout: 30000
securityDefinitions:
 apig-auth-app:
  in: header
  name: Authorization
  type: apiKey
  x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
 apig-auth-iam:
  in: header
  name: unused
  type: apiKey
  x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM
```

OpenAPI example:

```
openapi: 3.0.0
info:
 description: import apis
 title: importHttpEndpoint
 version: '1.0'
servers:
 - url: >-
    http://api.account.com
 - url: >-
    https://api.account.com
paths:
 /function/{name}:
  get:
    description: invoke function by name
    operationId: invokeFunction
    parameters:
      - description: function name
      in: path
       name: name
      required: true
```

```
schema:
       maxLength: 0
       maximum: 0
       minimum: 0
       type: string
      x-apigateway-pass-through: always
      example: "
     - description: authorization token
      in: header
      name: test
      required: true
      schema:
       maxLength: 0
       maximum: 0
       minimum: 0
       type: string
      x-apigateway-pass-through: always
      example: "
    responses:
     default-cors:
      description: response example
      x-apigateway-result-failure-sample: "
      x-apigateway-result-normal-sample: "
     - apig-auth-iam: []
    servers:
     - url: >-
       https://api.account.com
    x-apigateway-backend:
     functionEndpoints:
      alias-urn: '
      description: "
      function-urn: "your function urn address"
      invocation-type: async
      network-type: V1
      timeout: 30000
      version: "your function version"
     parameters:
       - description: invoke user
       in: HEADER
       name: X-Invoke-User
       origin: CONSTANT
       value: apigateway
       - description: function name
       in: QUERY
       name: functionName
       origin: REQUEST
       value: name
     type: FUNCTION
    x-apigateway-cors: true
    x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64: true
    x-apigateway-match-mode: NORMAL
    x-apigateway-request-type: public
    x-apigateway-response: default
components:
 responses:
  default-cors:
    description: response example
    headers:
     Access-Control-Allow-Origin:
      schema:
       default: '*'
       type: string
 securitySchemes:
  apig-auth-app:
    in: header
    name: Authorization
    type: apiKey
    x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
```

```
apig-auth-iam:
in: header
name: unused
type: apiKey
x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM
x-apigateway-responses:
default: {}
```

Importing a Mock Backend Service API

Import the definition of a Mock backend service API that uses the GET method and is accessed without authentication.

Swagger example:

```
swagger: "2.0"
info:
 title: "importMockEndpoint"
 description: "import apis"
 version: "1.0"
host: "api.account.com"
paths:
 '/mock':
  get:
    operationId: "mock"
    description: "mock test"
   schemes:
    - http
    responses:
     "200":
      description: "mock result"
    x-apigateway-request-type: "private"
    x-apigateway-cors: true
   x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64: true
    x-apigateway-match-mode: "NORMAL"
    x-apigateway-backend:
     type: "MOCK"
     mockEndpoints:
      result-content: "{\"message\": \"mocked\"}"
securityDefinitions:
 apig-auth-app:
  in: header
  name: Authorization
  type: apiKey
  x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
 apig-auth-iam:
  in: header
  name: unused
  type: apiKey
  x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM
```

OpenAPI example:

```
openapi: 3.0.0
info:
description: import apis
title: importHttpVpcEndpoint
version: '1.0'
servers:
- urt: >-
http://abc.com
- url: >-
https://abc.com
paths:
/mock:
get:
description: mock test
operationId: mock
```

```
responses:
     default-cors:
      description: response example
      x-apigateway-result-failure-sample: "
      x-apigateway-result-normal-sample: "
   servers:
     - url: >-
       http://abc.com
   x-apigateway-backend:
     mockEndpoints:
      description: "
      result-content: '{"message": "mocked"}'
     type: MOCK
   x-apigateway-cors: true
   x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64: true
   x-apigateway-match-mode: NORMAL
   x-apigateway-request-type: private
   x-apigateway-response: default
components:
 responses:
  default-cors:
   description: response example
   headers:
     Access-Control-Allow-Origin:
      schema:
       default: '*'
       type: string
 securitySchemes:
  apig-auth-app:
   in: header
   name: Authorization
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
  apig-auth-app-header:
   in: header
   name: Authorization
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-opt:
     appcode-auth-type: header
   x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
  apig-auth-iam:
   in: header
   name: unused
   type: apiKey
   x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM
 x-apigateway-responses:
 default: {}
```

Follow-Up Operations

Publish the imported APIs in an environment so that they can be called by users.

2.14.3 Exporting APIs

You can export APIs one by one or in batches as JSON or YAML files.

Procedure

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Groups**. Click a group name and click **Export**.

Or choose **API Management** > **APIs**, and click **Export APIs**.

Step 4 Set the export parameters.

Table 2-23 Parameters for exporting APIs

| Parameter | Description | |
|-----------------|--|--|
| API Group | Select the group of which APIs will be exported. | |
| Environment | Select the environment where the APIs to be exported have been published. | |
| API | By default, all APIs in the group that have been published in the selected environment are exported. To export only specific APIs, click Select APIs , and specify the APIs you want to export. | |
| API Definition | Basic: The basic definition of an API is composed of the request and response definitions. It does not include the backend definition. The request definition includes both standard and extended Swagger fields. This function can generate a Swagger or OpenAPI API definition file. Full: The full definition of an API is composed of the request, backend, and response definitions. This function can be used to back up the full definition of an API as a Swagger or OpenAPI file. Extended: The extended definition of an API is composed of the request, backend, and response | |
| | definitions as well as the request throttling policy, access control policy, and other configurations of the API. | |
| Format | Export APIs in JSON or YAML format. | |
| Version | Set the version of the APIs to be exported. If you do not specify a version, the version will be set as the current date and time. | |
| OpenAPI Version | Export Swagger 2.0 or OpenAPI 3.0 APIs. | |

Step 5 Click **Export**. The export result is displayed on the right of the page and the API file is automatically downloaded.

----End

2.14.4 Extended Definition

2.14.4.1 x-apigateway-auth-type

Meaning: Swagger-based apiKey authentication format, which defines an authentication mode provided by APIG.

Scope of effect: Security Scheme Object (2.0)/Security Scheme Object (3.0)

Swagger:

securityDefinitions:

apig-auth-app: in: header name: Authorization type: apiKey

x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1

apig-auth-iam: in: header name: unused type: apiKey

x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM

OpenAPI example:

securitySchemes:
 apig-auth-app:
 in: header
 name: Authorization
 type: apiKey
 x-apigateway-auth-type: AppSigv1
 apig-auth-iam:
 in: header
 name: unused
 type: apiKey
 x-apigateway-auth-type: IAM

Table 2-24 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|----------------------------|-------------------|--------|---|
| x-apigateway- auth-type | Yes | String | Authentication mode used on APIG. AppSigv1 and IAM are supported. |
| type | Yes | String | Authentication type. Only apiKey is supported. |
| name | Yes | String | Name of the parameter for authentication. |
| in | Yes | String | Only header is supported. |
| description | No | String | Description about the authentication. |

2.14.4.2 x-apigateway-request-type

Meaning: API request type, which can be **public** or **private**.

Scope of effect: Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

Example:

```
paths:
'/path':
get:
x-apigateway-request-type: 'public'
```

Table 2-25 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|--------|--|
| x-apigateway- request-type | Yes | String | API visibility. The options include public and private . |
| | | | public: The API can be made available for sale. |
| | | | private: The API will not be available for sale. |

2.14.4.3 x-apigateway-match-mode

Meaning: Request URL matching mode, which can be **NORMAL** or **SWA**.

Scope of effect: Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

Example:

```
paths:
'/path':
get:
x-apigateway-match-mode: 'SWA'
```

Table 2-26 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------|--|
| x-apigateway- match-mode | Yes | String | API matching mode. The options include SWA and NORMAL . |
| | | | SWA: prefix match. For example, both /prefix/foo and /prefix/bar match /prefix, but /prefixpart does not match. |
| | | | NORMAL: exact match. |

2.14.4.4 x-apigateway-cors

Meaning: Specifies whether CORS is supported. The value is of the Boolean type.

Scope of effect: Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

Example:

```
paths:
'/path':
get:
x-apigateway-cors: true
```

Table 2-27 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|---------|---|
| x-apigateway- cors | Yes | boolean | Whether to support CORS. • true: support • false: not support |

For the API request for enabling CORS, the headers listed in the following table will be added to the response.

| Header | Value | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|---|
| Access-Control-Max- Age | 172800 | Maximum time the response of a preflight request can be cached. Unit: s |
| Access-Control-Allow- Origin | * | Requests from any domain are allowed. |
| Access-Control-Allow- Headers | X-Sdk-Date, X-Sdk-Nonce, X-Proxy-Signed-Headers, X- Sdk-Content-Sha256, X- Forwarded-For, Authorization, Content- Type, Accept, Accept- Ranges, Cache-Control, and Range | Headers that can be used by a formal request. |
| Access-Control-Allow- Methods | GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS, and PATCH | Methods that can be used by a formal request. |

2.14.4.5 x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64

Meaning: Whether to perform Base64 encoding on the request body used for interaction with FunctionGraph. The value is of the Boolean type.

Scope of effect:Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

Example:

paths:
'/path':
get:
"x-apigateway-is-send-fg-body-base64": true

Table 2-28 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|---|-------------------|---------|---|
| x-apigateway- is-send-fg- body-base64 | No | boolean | Specifies whether to perform Base64 encoding on the request body for interaction with FunctionGraph. • true: yes |
| | | | • false: no |

2.14.4.6 x-apigateway-any-method

Meaning: API request method used by default if no HTTP request method is specified.

Scope of effect: Path Item Object (2.0)/Path Item Object (3.0)

Example:

```
paths:

'/path':
get:
produces:
- application/json
responses:
"200":
description: "get response"
x-apigateway-any-method:
produces:
- application/json
responses:
"200":
description: "any response"
```

Table 2-29 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------|-----------------|
| x-apigateway- any-method | No | String | Request method. |

2.14.4.7 x-apigateway-backend

Meaning: API backend definition.

Scope of effect: Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

Example:

```
paths:
'/users/{userId}':
qet:
```

```
produces:
- "application/json"
responses:
default:
description: "default response"
x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
x-apigateway-backend:
type: "backend endpoint type"
```

Table 2-30 Parameter description

| Parameter | Mand atory | Туре | Description |
|--------------------------|---------------|--|---|
| x-apigateway- backend | Yes | String | Backend service definition. |
| type | Yes | String | Backend service type. The options include HTTP, HTTP-VPC, FUNCTION, and MOCK. |
| parameters | No | x- apigateway- backend.para meters | Backend parameters. |
| httpEndpoints | No | x- apigateway- backend.http Endpoints | HTTP backend service definition. |
| httpVpcEndpo ints | No | x- apigateway- backend.http VpcEndpoint s | HTTP VPC backend service definition. |
| functionEndp oints | No | x- apigateway- backend.func tionEndpoint s | Function backend service definition. |
| mockEndpoint s | No | x- apigateway- backend.moc kEndpoints | Mock backend service definition. |

2.14.4.8 x-apigateway-backend.parameters

Meaning: API backend service definition. **Scope of effect**: x-apigateway-backend

Example:

paths:
 '/users/{userId}':

```
get:
 produces:
   - "application/json"
 parameters:
- name: "X-Auth-Token"
    description: "Authentication token"
    type: "string"
    in: "header"
    required: true
   - name: "userId"
    description: "Username" type: "string"
    in: "path"
    required: true
 responses:
   default:
    description: "default response"
 x-apigateway-request-type: "public" x-apigateway-backend:
   type: "HTTP"
   parameters:
    - name: "userId"
value: "userId"
      in: "query"
     origin: "REQUEST"
    description: "Username"
    - name: "X-Invoke-User"
      value: "apigateway"
      in: "header"
      origin: "CONSTANT"
    description: "Caller"
```

Table 2-31 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-------------|-------------------|--------|---|
| name | Yes | String | Parameter name, which consists of a maximum of 32 bytes, starting with a letter. Only letters, digits, periods (.), hyphens (-), and underscores (_) are allowed. The names of header parameters are not case-sensitive. |
| value | Yes | String | Parameter value, which is a parameter name if the parameter comes from a request. |
| in | Yes | String | Parameter location, which can be header, query, or path. |
| origin | Yes | String | Parameter mapping source. The options include REQUEST and CONSTANT . |
| description | No | String | Parameter meaning. |

2.14.4.9 x-apigateway-backend.httpEndpoints

Meaning: HTTP backend service definition. **Scope of effect**: x-apigateway-backend

Example:

```
paths:
 '/users/{userId}':
  get:
   produces:
     - "application/json"
    parameters:
     - name: "X-Auth-Token"
      description: "Authentication token"
      type: "string"
      in: "header"
      required: true
    responses:
     default:
      description: "default response"
    x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
    x-apigateway-backend:
     type: "HTTP"
     httpEndpoints:
      address: "example.com"
      scheme: "http"
      method: "GET"
      path: "/users"
      timeout: 30000
```

Table 2-32 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------|-------------------|--------|--|
| address | Yes | Array | Backend service address. The format is <domain address="" ip="" name="" or="">:[Port number]</domain> |
| scheme | Yes | String | Backend request protocol. HTTP and HTTPS are supported. |
| method | Yes | String | Backend request method. The options include GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS, PATCH, and ANY. |
| path | Yes | String | Backend request path, which can contain variables. |
| timeout | No | Number | Backend request timeout in milliseconds. The range is 1–60,000, and the default value is 5000 . |

2.14.4.10 x-apigateway-backend.httpVpcEndpoints

Meaning: HTTP VPC backend service definition.

Scope of effect: x-apigateway-backend

Example:

```
paths:
 '/users/{userId}':
  get:
   produces:
     - "application/json"
    parameters:
     - name: "X-Auth-Token"
      description: "Authentication token"
      type: "string"
      in: "header"
      required: true
    responses:
     default:
      description: "default response"
    x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
    x-apigateway-backend:
     type: "HTTP-VPC"
     httpVpcEndpoints:
      name: "vpc-test-1"
      scheme: "http"
      method: "GET"
      path: "/users"
      timeout: 30000
```

Table 2-33 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------|-------------------|--------|--|
| name | Yes | Array | VPC channel name. |
| scheme | Yes | String | Backend request protocol. HTTP and HTTPS are supported. |
| method | Yes | String | Backend request method. The options include GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, OPTIONS, PATCH, and ANY. |
| path | Yes | String | Backend request path, which can contain variables. |
| timeout | No | Number | Backend request timeout in milliseconds. The range is 1–60,000, and the default value is 5000 . |

2.14.4.11 x-apigateway-backend.functionEndpoints

Meaning: Function backend service definition.

Scope of effect: x-apigateway-backend

```
paths:
'/users/{userId}':
qet:
```

```
produces:
 - "application/json"
parameters:
 - name: "X-Auth-Token"
  description: "Authentication token"
  type: "string"
  in: "header"
  required: true
responses:
 default:
  description: "default response"
x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
x-apigateway-backend:
 type: "FUNCTION"
 functionEndpoints:
  version: "v1"
  function-urn: ""
  invocation-type: "synchronous"
  timeout: 30000
```

Table 2-34 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------|---|
| function-urn | Yes | String | Function URN. |
| version | Yes | String | Function version. |
| invocation- type | Yes | String | Function invocation type. The value can be async or sync . |
| timeout | No | Number | Function timeout in milliseconds. The range is 1–60,000, and the default value is 5000 . |

2.14.4.12 x-apigateway-backend.mockEndpoints

Meaning: Mock backend service definition.

Scope of effect: x-apigateway-backend

```
paths:
 '/users/{userId}':
  get:
    produces:
     - "application/json"
    parameters:
      - name: "X-Auth-Token"
      description: "Authentication token"
      type: "string"
      in: "header
      required: true
    responses:
     default:
      description: "default response"
    x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
    x-apigateway-backend:
     type: "MOCK"
```

```
mockEndpoints:
result-content: "mocked"
```

Table 2-35 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|----------------|-------------------|--------|----------------|
| result-content | Yes | String | Mock response. |

2.14.4.13 x-apigateway-backend-policies

Meaning: API backend policy.

Scope of effect: Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

```
paths:
 '/users/{userId}':
  get:
   produces:
     - "application/json"
    responses:
     default:
      description: "default response"
    x-apigateway-request-type: "public"
    x-apigateway-backend:
     type: "backend endpoint type"
    x-apigateway-backend-policies:
     - type: "backend endpoint type"
      name: "backend policy name"
      conditions:
        - type: "equal/enum/pattern",
         value: "string",
         origin: "source/request_parameter",
         parameter_name: "string"
```

Table 2-36 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| x-apigateway- backend- policies | No | x-apigateway- backend- policies | Backend policies. |
| type | Yes | String | Backend service type. The options include HTTP, HTTP-VPC, FUNCTION, and MOCK. |
| name | Yes | String | Backend policy name. |

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------|--|------------------------------|
| parameters | No | x- apigateway- backend.para meters | Backend parameters. |
| httpEndpoints | No | x- apigateway- backend.http Endpoints | HTTP service definition. |
| httpVpcEndpo ints | No | x- apigateway- backend.http VpcEndpoints | HTTP-VPC service definition. |
| functionEndp oints | No | x- apigateway- backend.func tionEndpoint s | Function service definition. |
| mockEndpoint s | No | x- apigateway- backend.moc kEndpoints | Mock service definition. |
| conditions | Yes | x- apigateway- backend- policies.condi tions | Policy condition array. |

2.14.4.14 x-apigateway-backend-policies.conditions

Meaning: API backend policy conditions.

Scope of effect: x-apigateway-backend-policies

```
paths:

'/users/{userId}':

get:

produces:

- "application/json"

responses:

default:

description: "default response"

x-apigateway-request-type: "public"

x-apigateway-backend:

type: "backend endpoint type"

x-apigateway-backend-policies:

- type: "backend endpoint type"
```

```
name: "backend policy name"
conditions:
- type: "equal/enum/pattern",
value: "string",
origin: "source/request_parameter",
parameter_name: "string"
```

Table 2-37 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------|-------------------|--------|--|
| type | Yes | String | Policy condition type. The options include equal , enum , and pattern . |
| value | Yes | String | Policy condition value. |
| origin | Yes | String | Policy condition source. The options include source and request . |
| parameter | No | String | Input parameter name if the origin parameter is set to request . |

2.14.4.15 x-apigateway-ratelimit

Meaning: Request throttling policy.

Scope of effect: Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

Example:

```
paths:
'/path':
get:
x-apigateway-ratelimit: 'customRatelimitName'
```

Table 2-38 Parameter description

| Parameter | Mand atory | Туре | Description |
|----------------------------|---------------|--------|----------------------------|
| x-apigateway- ratelimit | No | String | Request throttling policy. |

2.14.4.16 x-apigateway-ratelimits

Meaning: Mapping between a request throttling policy name and limit values.

Scope of effect: Swagger Object

Example:

x-apigateway-ratelimits: customRatelimitName: api-limit: 200 app-limit: 200
user-limit: 200
ip-limit: 200
interval: 1
unit: second/minute/hour
shared: true
special:
- type: APP
limit: 100

instance: xxxxxxxxx

Table 2-39 Parameter description

| Parameter | Mand atory | Туре | Description |
|-------------------------|---------------|--|---|
| customRateli mitName | No | x- apigateway- ratelimits.pol icy | Name of a request throttling policy. To use the policy, set x-apigateway-ratelimit to the policy name. |

2.14.4.17 x-apigateway-ratelimits.policy

Meaning: Definition of a request throttling policy.

Scope of effect: x-apigateway-ratelimits

Example:

x-apigateway-ratelimits: customRatelimitName: api-limit: 200 app-limit: 200 user-limit: 200 ip-limit: 200 interval: 1 unit: MINUTE shared: false special: - type: USER limit: 100 instance: xxxxxxx

Table 2-40 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|------------|-------------------|--------|--|
| api-limit | Yes | Number | Maximum number of times an API can be called. |
| user-limit | No | Number | Maximum number of times the API can be called by a user. |
| app-limit | No | Number | Maximum number of times the API can be called by an app. |

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------|-------------------|---|---|
| ip-limit | No | Number | Maximum number of times the API can be called by an IP address. |
| interval | Yes | Number | Throttling period. |
| unit | Yes | String | Throttling unit, which can be SECOND , MINUTE , HOUR , or DAY . |
| shared | No | Boolean | Whether to share the throttling limits among APIs. |
| special | No | x- apigateway- ratelimits.pol icy.special Array | Special request throttling policy. |

2.14.4.18 x-apigateway-ratelimits.policy.special

Meaning: Definition of a special request throttling policy.

Scope of effect: x-apigateway-ratelimits.policy

Example:

x-apigateway-ratelimits:
customRatelimitName:
api-limit: 200
app-limit: 200
iser-limit: 200
ip-limit: 200
interval: 1
unit: MINUTE
shared: false
special:
- type: USER
limit: 100
instance: xxxxxxxxx

Table 2-41 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------|-------------------|--------|--|
| type | Yes | String | Special request throttling policy type, which can be APP or USER . |
| limit | Yes | Number | Access limit. |
| instance | Yes | String | ID of an excluded app or user. |

2.14.4.19 x-apigateway-access-control

Meaning: Access control policy.

Scope of effect: Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

Example:

paths:

'/path':

get:

x-apigateway-access-control: 'customAccessControlName'

Table 2-42 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|--------|------------------------|
| x-apigateway- access-control | No | String | Access control policy. |

2.14.4.20 x-apigateway-access-controls

Meaning: Mapping between an access control policy name and limit settings.

Scope of effect: Swagger Object

Example:

x-apigateway-access-controls: customAccessControlName: acl-type: "DENY" entity-type: "IP"

value: 127.0.0.1,192.168.0.1/16

Table 2-43 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|---|---|
| customAccess ControlName | No | x- apigateway- access- controls.polic y | Name of an access control policy. To use the policy, set x-apigateway-access-control to the policy name. |

2.14.4.21 x-apigateway-access-controls.policy

Meaning: Definition of an access control policy.

Scope of effect: x-apigateway-access-controls

x-apigateway-access-controls: customAccessControlName: acl-type: "DENY" entity-type: "IP"

value: 127.0.0.1,192.168.0.1/16

Table 2-44 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|-------------|-------------------|--------|--|
| acl-type | Yes | String | Access control effect. The options include PERMIT and DENY . |
| entity-type | Yes | String | Access control object. Only IP addresses are supported. |
| value | Yes | String | Access control values, which are separated with commas (,). |

2.14.4.22 x-apigateway-plugins

Meaning: API plug-in service.

Scope of effect:Operation Object (2.0)/Operation Object (3.0)

Example:

```
paths:

'/path':

get:

x-apigateway-plugins: ['Plugin_mock']
x-apigateway-plugins
```

Table 2-45 Parameter description

| Parameter | Man dator y | Туре | Description |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-------|------------------------------------|
| x-apigateway- plugins | No | Array | List of plug-ins bound to the API. |

2.15 Viewing APIs

The **APIs** page displays all APIs of the current gateway, including the URL, running environment, and authentication mode.

Procedure

Step 1 Go to the APIG console.

- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** Modify, publish, and debug APIs of the gateway.
- **Step 4** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **APIs**.
- **Step 5** Click an API name to go to the details page of the group to which the API belongs. For details about how to create an API, manage domain names, and set environment variables, see the preceding sections.

----End

2.16 HTTP 2.0

APIG supports HTTP/2, which is a major revision of HTTP and was originally named HTTP 2.0. It provides binary encoding, request multiplexing over a single connection, and request header compression, improving transmission performance and throughput with a lower latency.

□ NOTE

- HTTP 2.0 strongly depends on network stability. To use HTTP 2.0, ensure that your network is stable and your client supports this protocol.
- If your gateway does not support HTTP 2.0, contact technical support to upgrade it.
- To disable HTTP 2.0, turn off **HTTP/2** under the **request_custom_config** parameter on the **Parameters** tab page of the APIG console.
- Binary encoding

Unlike HTTP 1.x where data is transmitted in text format, data in HTTP 2.0 is split into messages and frames for binary encoding. Compared with string (text) parsing, binary parsing is easier and less error-prone and delivers higher transmission performance.

Multiplexing

With binary encoding, HTTP 2.0 no longer relies on multiple connections to process and send requests and responses concurrently.

For the same domain name, all requests are completed on a single connection, and each connection can process any number of messages. A message consists of one or more frames, which can be sent out of order and finally recombined based on the stream ID in the header of each frame. This shortens the latency and improves the efficiency.

• Header compression

HTTP 2.0 uses an encoder to reduce the size of the headers to transmit. Both the client and server store a header field table to avoid transmitting same headers repeatedly, achieving high throughput.

3 API Policies

3.1 Creating a Policy and Binding It to APIs

APIG provides flexible API control policies.

NOTICE

Policy parameters will be stored as plaintext. To prevent information leakage, do not contain sensitive information in these parameters.

Guidelines

- An API can be bound with only one policy of the same type.
- Policies are independent of APIs. A policy takes effect for an API only after they are bound to each other. When binding a policy to an API, you must specify an environment where the API has been published. The policy takes effect for the API only in the specified environment.
- After you bind a policy to an API, unbind the policy from the API, or update the policy, you do not need to publish the API again.
- Taking an API offline does not affect the policies bound to it. The policies are still bound to the API if the API is published again.
- Policies that have been bound to APIs cannot be deleted.

Creating a Policy

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Policies**.
- **Step 4** On the **Policies** tab, click **Create Policy**.
- **Step 5** Click the desired policy type.

• Plug-in policies

Set the policy information.

Table 3-1 Policy configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| Name | Enter a policy name that conforms to specific rules to facilitate search. |
| Туре | Type of the policy, which determines the extension capabilities. NOTE If a policy type is not supported by your gateway, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway to the latest version. |
| | CORS: Provides the capabilities of specifying preflight request headers and response headers and automatically creating preflight request APIs for cross-origin API access. |
| | HTTP Response Header Management: Enables you to customize HTTP response headers that will be displayed in an API response. |
| | Request Throttling 2.0: Limits the number of times that an API can be called within a specific time period. Parameter-based, basic, and excluded throttling is supported. |
| | Kafka Log Push: Pushes API calling logs to Kafka so that you can view these logs. |
| | Circuit Breaker: Protects your backend service when a performance issue occurs. |
| | Third-Party Authorizer: Authenticate API requests with your own service. |
| Description | Description about the plug-in. |
| Policy Content | Content of the plug-in, which can be configured in a form or using a script. |
| | The plug-in content varies depending on the plug-in type: |
| | - CORS |
| | - HTTP Response Header Management |
| | Request Throttling 2.0Kafka Log Push |
| | - Circuit Breaker |
| | - Third-Party Authorizer |

Traditional policies

The policy content varies depending on the policy type:

- Request Throttling
- Access Control
- Signature Keys

Step 6 Click OK.

To clone this policy, click Clone in the Operation column.

□ NOTE

- The name of a cloned policy cannot be the same as that of any existing policy.
- Request throttling and signature key policies cannot be cloned.
- After the policy is created, perform the operations described in **Binding the Policy to APIs** for the policy to take effect for the API.

----End

Binding the Policy to APIs

- **Step 1** Click a policy name to go to the policy details page.
- **Step 2** In the **APIs** area, select an environment and click **Select APIs**.
- **Step 3** Select an API group and then select APIs.
- Step 4 Click OK.
 - If an API no longer needs this policy, click Unbind in the row that contains the API.
 - If there are multiple APIs that no longer need this policy, select these APIs, and click **Unbind** above the API list. You can unbind a policy from a maximum of 1000 APIs at a time.

----End

3.2 CORS

For security purposes, the browser restricts cross-domain requests from being initiated from a page script. In this case, the page can access only the resources from the current domain. CORS allows the browser to send XMLHttpRequest to the server in a different domain. For details about CORS, see CORS.

The CORS plug-in provides the capabilities of specifying preflight request headers and response headers and automatically creating preflight request APIs for crossorigin API access.

◯ NOTE

If your gateway does not support this policy, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway to the latest version.

Usage Guidelines

- You have understood the Guidelines for Using Plug-ins.
- APIs with the same request path in an API group can only be bound with the same CORS plug-in policy.

- If you have enabled CORS for an API and have also bound the CORS plug-in to the API, the CORS plug-in will be used.
- You cannot bind the CORS plug-in to APIs with the same request path as another API that uses the OPTIONS method.
- When you bind a plug-in policy to an API (see **Binding the Policy to APIs**), ensure that the request method of the API is included in **allow_methods**.

Configuration Parameters

Table 3-2 Configuration parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| Allowed Origins | Access-Control-Allow-Origin response header, which specifies either a single origin, which tells browsers to allow that origin to access an API; or else — for requests without credentials — the "*" wildcard, to tell browsers to allow any origin to access the API. Separate multiple URIs using commas. |
| Allowed Methods | Access-Control-Allow-Methods response header, which specifies the HTTP methods allowed when accessing the API. Separate multiple methods using commas. |
| Allowed Headers | Access-Control-Allow-Headers response header, which specifies request headers that can be used when making an XMLHttpRequest. Separate multiple headers using commas. |
| | By default, simple request headers Accept, Accept- Language, Content-Language, and Content-Type (only if the value is application/x-www-form- urlencoded, multipart/form-data, or text/plain) are carried in requests. You do not need to configure these headers in this parameter. |
| | When you create a CORS policy, Allowed Headers is blank by default, which means cross-domain requests cannot carry any custom headers. |
| | Setting Allowed Headers to an asterisk (*) means cross- domain requests can carry any custom headers. |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Exposed Headers | Access-Control-Expose-Headers response header, which specifies which response headers can be contained in the response of XMLHttpRequest. Separate multiple headers using commas. |
| | By default, basic response headers Cache-Control, Content-Language, Content-Type, Expires, Last-Modified, and Pragma can be contained in the response. You do not need to configure these headers in this parameter. |
| | NOTE |
| | When you create a CORS policy, Exposed Headers is blank by default, which means the JavaScript code of a browser cannot parse the headers in a cross-domain access response. However, the following basic response headers obtained using the getResponseHeader() method of the XMLHttpRequest object are excluded: Cache-Control, Content-Language, Content-Type, Expires, Last- Modified, and Pragma. |
| | Setting Exposed Headers to an asterisk (*) means the JavaScript code of a browser can parse all the headers in a cross-domain access response. |
| Maximum Age | Access-Control-Max-Age response header, which specifies for how many seconds the results of a preflight request can be cached. No more preflight requests will be sent within the specified period. |
| Allowed Credentials | Access-Control-Allow-Credentials response header, which specifies whether XMLHttpRequest requests can carry cookies. |

Example Script

```
{
  "allow_origin": "*",
  "allow_methods": "GET,POST,PUT",
  "allow_headers": "Content-Type,Accept,Accept-Ranges,Cache-Control",
  "expose_headers": "X-Request-Id,X-Apig-Latency",
  "max_age": 86400,
  "allow_credentials": true
}
```

3.3 HTTP Response Header Management

HTTP response headers are part of the response returned by APIG to a client that calls an API. You can customize HTTP response headers that will be contained in an API response.

□ NOTE

If your gateway does not support this policy, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway to the latest version.

Usage Guidelines

You cannot modify the response headers (including **x-apig-*** and **x-request-id**) added by APIG or the headers required for CORS.

Configuration Parameters

Table 3-3 Configuration parameters

| | - |
|-----------|---|
| Parameter | Description |
| Name | Response header name, which is case-insensitive and must be unique within a plug-in. You can add a maximum of 10 response headers. |
| Value | Value of the response header. This parameter does not take effect and can be left blank if you set Action to Delete . |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Action | Response header operation. You can override, append, delete, skip, or add response headers. |
| | Override |
| | The value of this response header will override the value of the same response header that exists in an API response. |
| | If an API response contains multiple response headers with the same name, only the value of this response header will be returned. |
| | If there is no response header with the same name in an API response, the value of this response header will be returned. |
| | Append |
| | • If an API response contains the specified header, the value you set here will be added, following the existing value. The two values will be separated with commas (,). |
| | If an API response contains multiple response headers with the same name, values of these response headers will be returned and separated with commas (,), appended by the value of this response header. |
| | If there is no response header with the same name in an API response, the value of this response header will be returned. |
| | Delete |
| | This response header will be deleted if a response header with the same name exists in an API response. |
| | If an API response contains multiple response headers with the same name, all these response headers will be deleted. |
| | Skip |
| | This response header will be skipped if a response header with the same name exists in an API response. |
| | If an API response contains multiple response headers with the same name, values of all these response headers will be returned. |
| | If there is no response header with the same name in an API response, the value of this response header will be returned. |
| | Add |

| Parameter | Description | |
|-----------|---|--|
| | The value of this response header will be returned in an API response even if the response contains a response header with the same name. | |

Example Script

3.4 Request Throttling 2.0

A request throttling 2.0 policy limits the number of times that an API can be called within a specific time period. Parameter-based, basic, and excluded throttling is supported.

Basic throttling

Throttle requests by API, user, credential, or source IP address. This function is equivalent to a traditional request throttling policy (see **Request Throttling**) but is incompatible with it.

Parameter-based throttling

Throttle requests based on headers, path parameter, method, query strings, or system parameters.

Excluded throttling

Throttle requests based on specific credentials or tenants.

◯ NOTE

If your gateway does not support this policy, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway to the latest version.

Usage Guidelines

- A traditional request throttling policy becomes invalid if a request throttling 2.0 policy is bound to the same API as the traditional one.
- You can define a maximum of 100 parameter-based throttling rules. The parameter name is max. 32 characters.
- The policy content cannot exceed 65,535 characters.

Parameter Description

Table 3-4 Parameter description

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|---|
| Throttling | High-performance throttling is recommended. High precision: better for low concurrency scenarios (performance is affected) |
| | High performance: better for medium concurrency scenarios (performance is less affected, with small occasional errors) |
| | Single node: better for high concurrency scenarios (request throttling within each node; performance is least affected, with small occasional errors) |
| Policy Type | API-specific Monitor and control the requests for a single API. API-sharing Monitor and control requests for all APIs bound with the policy. |
| Period | For how long you want to limit the number of API calls. This parameter can be used together with the following parameters: |
| | Max. API Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called within a specific period. |
| | Max. User Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by a user within a specific period. |
| | Max. Credential Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by a credential within a specific period. |
| | Max. IP Address Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by an IP address within a specific period. |
| Max. API Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called within the specified period. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Max. User Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by a user within the specified period. For APIs with IAM authentication, the throttling is based on a project ID; for APIs with app authentication, the throttling is based on an account ID. For details about account ID and project ID, see the description about Excluded Tenants in this table. • The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of |
| | Max. API Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . If there are many users under your assount that |
| | If there are many users under your account that access an API, the request throttling limits of the API will apply to all these users. |
| Max. Credential Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by a credential within the specified period. This limit only applies to APIs that are accessed through app authentication. |
| | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. API Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| Max. IP Address Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by an IP address within the specified period. |
| | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. API Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| Parameter-based Throttling | Enable or disable parameter-based throttling. After this function is enabled, API requests are throttled based on the parameters you set. |
| Parameters | Define parameters for rule matching. |
| | Parameter Location: the location of a parameter used for rule matching. |
| | path: API request URI. This parameter is configured by default. |
| | method: API request method. This parameter is configured by default. |
| | – header : the key of a request header. |
| | – query : the key of a query string. |
| | - system : a system parameter. |
| | Parameter Name: the name of a parameter to match the specified value in a rule. |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Rules | Define throttling rules. A rule consists of conditions, an API request throttling limit, and a period. |
| | To add more rules, click Add Rule . |
| | Conditions |
| | Click do set condition expressions. To set an expression, select a parameter and operator, and enter a value. |
| | – =: equal to |
| | - !=: not equal to |
| | – pattern : regular expression |
| | enum: enumerated values. Separate them with commas (,). |
| | Max. API Requests The maximum number of times that an API can be called within a specific time period. Period |
| | A period of time that will apply with the throttling limit you set. If this parameter is not specified, the period set in the Police Information area will be used. |
| | For example, configure parameter-based throttling as follows: add the Host parameter and specify the location as header ; add the condition Host = www.abc.com , and set the throttling limit to 10 and the period to 60s. For APIs whose Host parameter in the request header is equal to www.abc.com , they cannot be called again once called 10 times in 60s. |
| Excluded Throttling | Enable or disable excluded throttling. After this function is enabled, the throttling limits for excluded tenants and credentials override the Max. User Requests and Max. Credential Requests set in the Basic Throttling area. |
| Excluded Tenants | Tenant ID: an account ID or project ID. |
| | Specify a project ID for an API with app authentication. For details, see Obtaining a Project ID. |
| | Specify an account ID (not IAM user ID) for an API with IAM authentication. For details, see Obtaining an Account Name and Account ID. |
| | Threshold: the maximum number of times that a specific tenant can access an API within the specified period. The threshold cannot exceed the value of Max. API Requests in the Basic Throttling area. |

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Excluded Credentials | Select a credential, and specify the maximum number of times that the credential can access an API within the specified period. The threshold cannot exceed the value of Max. API Requests in the Basic Throttling area. |

Example Script

```
"scope": "basic",
"default_interval": 60,
"default_time_unit": "second",
"api_limit": 100,
"app_limit": 50,
"user_limit": 50,
"ip_limit": 20,
"specials": [
   "type": "app",
   "policies": [
      "key": "e9230d70c749408eb3d1e838850cdd23", "limit": 10
   "type": "user",
   "policies": [
      "key": "878f1b87f71c40a7a15db0998f358bb9",
      "limit": 10
  ]
 }
"algorithm": "counter",
"parameters": [
   "id": "3wuj354lpptv0toe0",
   "value": "reqPath",
   "type": "path",
"name": "reqPath"
   "id": "53h7e7j11u38l3ocp",
   "value": "method",
"type": "method",
   "name": "method"
   "id": "vv502bnb6g40td8u0",
   "value": "Host",
"type": "header",
   "name": "Host"
],
"rules": [
   "match_regex": "[\"Host\",\"==\",\"www.abc.com\"]",
   "rule_name": "u8mb",
   "time_unit": "second",
   "interval": 2,
```

```
"limit": 5
}
]
}
```

3.5 Kafka Log Push

Kafka log push policies push calling logs of open APIs to Kafka for analysis.

■ NOTE

If your gateway does not support this policy, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway to the latest version.

Usage Guidelines

- A maximum of five Kafka log push policies can be created for a gateway.
- APIs bound with a Kafka log push policy will deteriorate in performance by 30%.

Configuration Parameters

Table 3-5 Parameter description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------|--|
| Policy Information | |
| Broker Address | Connection address of the target Kafka. Separate multiple addresses with commas (,). |
| Topic | Topic of the target Kafka to report logs to. |
| Key | Partition of Kafka for storing logs as an ordered message queue. If this parameter is left blank, logs are stored in different partitions. |
| Retry | Configuration for retrying when logs fail to be pushed to Kafka. |
| | • Retry Times : the number of retry attempts in case of a failure. Enter 0 to 5. |
| | • Retry Interval : the interval of retry attempts in case of a failure. Enter 1 to 10 seconds. |
| SASL Configuratio | n |
| Security Protocol | Protocol used for connecting to the target Kafka. |
| | PLAINTEXT: user authentication protocol of the default access point |
| | SASL_PLAINTEXT: SASL user authentication protocol |
| | SASL_SSL: SSL user authentication protocol |
| Message Tx/Rx Mechanism | Message transmission and receiving mechanism of the target Kafka. The default value is PLAIN . |

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------|--|
| SASL Username | This parameter is available only if Security Protocol is set to SASL_PLAINTEXT or SASL_SSL . |
| | Username used for SASL or SSL authentication. |
| SASL Password | This parameter is available only if Security Protocol is set to SASL_PLAINTEXT or SASL_SSL . |
| | User password used for SASL or SSL authentication. |
| Confirm SASL Password | This parameter is available only if Security Protocol is set to SASL_PLAINTEXT or SASL_SSL . |
| | Enter the SASL password again. |
| Certificate Content | This parameter is available only if Security Protocol is set to SASL_SSL . |
| | CA certificate used for SSL authentication. |
| Metadata Configu | ration |
| System Metadata | System fields that need to be included in pushed logs. By default, the start_time, request_id, client_ip, request_time, http_status, scheme, request_method, host, uri, upstream_addr, upstream_status, upstream_response_time, http_x_forwarded_for, http_user_agent, and error_type fields are carried in logs. You can also specify other system fields that need to be included. |
| Request Data | API request information that needs to be included in pushed logs. The log contains the request header: Specify a header that needs to be included. Separate multiple headers with commas (,). The asterisk (*) can be used as a wildcard. |
| | The log contains the request QueryString: Specify a query string that needs to be included. Separate multiple query strings with commas (,). The asterisk (*) can be used as a wildcard. The log contains the request body: If this option is selected, logs will contain the body of API requests. |
| Response Data | API response information that needs to be included in pushed logs. The log contains the response header: Specify a header that needs to be included. Separate multiple headers with commas (,). The asterisk (*) can be used as a wildcard. The log contains the response body: If this option is selected, logs will contain the body of API request responses. |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Customized Authentication | Custom authentication information that needs to be included in pushed logs. |
| | Frontend: Enter a response field of frontend authentication that needs to be included. Separate multiple fields with commas (,). |
| | Backend: Enter a response field of backend authentication that needs to be included. Separate multiple fields with commas (,). |

3.6 Circuit Breaker

Circuit breaker policies protect your backend services when a performance issue occurs. If the backend service of an API times out for N consecutive times or if the latency is long, the downgrade mechanism of a circuit breaker policy is triggered to return an error to the API caller or forward requests to a specified backend. After the backend service recovers, the circuit breaker closes and requests become normal.

If your gateway does not support this policy, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway to the latest version.

Parameter Description

Table 3-6 Parameter description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Policy Type | API-specific Control requests for a single API. API-sharing |
| | Control requests for all APIs bound with the policy. |
| Circuit Breaker Type | Triggering type of the circuit breaker. |
| | Timeout downgrade: The circuit breaker will be triggered upon backend timeout. |
| | Condition downgrade: The circuit breaker will be triggered when configured match conditions are met. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| Condition Type | Triggering mode of the circuit breaker. Count: Once the number of requests that meet conditions within a specified time window reaches the threshold, the circuit breaker is immediately triggered. Percentage: Once the percentage of requests that meet conditions within a specified time window reaches the threshold, the circuit breaker is triggered |
| Match Condition | after the time window expires. This parameter is required only when Circuit Breaker Type is set to Condition downgrade. |
| | Configure triggering conditions for the circuit breaker. Response Error Codes: The circuit breaker will be triggered if the backend responds with specified status codes. |
| | Response Latency: The circuit breaker will be triggered if the backend response latency reached a specified threshold. |
| Time Window (s) | The period for determining how many times have the conditions been met. Use this parameter together with Threshold or Min Percentage . If the threshold or percentage is reached, the circuit breaker is triggered. |
| Threshold | This parameter is required only when Condition Type is set to Count . Set the threshold for triggering the circuit breaker. Use this parameter together with Time Window . Once the number of backend requests that meet the conditions within the time window reaches the threshold, the circuit breaker is triggered. NOTE |
| | A circuit breaker policy is triggered for a single gateway component. If your gateway has multiple components, the triggering for each component is determined separately. If the threshold is reached within the time window for a gateway component, requests sent to the component trigger the circuit breaker, and other gateway components still forward requests normally. A gateway component is a connection address of your |
| | gateway. To view the number of gateway components, go to the Gateway Information page of the gateway and view the number of IP addresses in Private Network Access IP . |

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Min Calls | This parameter is required only when Condition Type is set to Percentage . |
| | Set the minimum number of API calls that will trigger the circuit breaker within the time period. The circuit breaker will not be triggered if the number of API calls within the time period is less than this value. |
| Min Percentage (%) | This parameter is required only when Condition Type is set to Percentage . |
| | Set the threshold for triggering the circuit breaker. Use this parameter together with Time Window . Once the percentage of backend requests that meet the conditions within the time window reaches the threshold, the circuit breaker is triggered. |
| Control Duration (s) | Time for which the circuit breaker will be on. When the time is reached, the circuit breaker will be off. |
| Backend Downgrade | Determine whether to enable backend downgrade. Enable: Requests for APIs that have triggered a downgrade will be forwarded to a specified backend. Disable: Requests for APIs that have triggered a downgrade will not be forwarded to any backend. Instead, an error message indicating that the service is unavailable will be returned. |

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| Backend Type | This parameter is required only when Backend Downgrade is enabled. |
| | Specify the backend type to which requests will be forwarded when the circuit breaker is on. |
| | Mock: The defined response will be returned. |
| | Status Code: the status code to be included in the response |
| | Response: the response body, which is in JSON format |
| | Response Header: header parameters to be included in the response |
| | HTTP&HTTPS: Backend requests will be forwarded to a specified HTTP&HTTPS backend service. |
| | Load Balance Channel: Determine whether to use a load balance channel to access the backend service. If yes, create a load balance channel in advance. |
| | Backend URL: address of the backend service to forward requests to. |
| | Timeout (ms): backend request timeout. The default value is 5000 ms. |
| | FunctionGraph: Backend requests will be forwarded to a specified function. |
| | Function URN: the unique identifier of a function. Click Select to select a function. |
| | Function Name: automatically displayed after you select a function. |
| | Version: version of the function to be used to receive backend requests. |
| | Invocation Mode: the mode in which the function is invoked. Synchronous: When receiving an invocation request, FunctionGraph immediately processes the request and returns a result. The client closes the connection once it has received a response from the backend. |
| | Asynchronous: After receiving an invocation request, FunctionGraph queues the request and returns the result after the request is successfully processed. The server processes the queuing requests one by one when it is idle. The client does not care about the invocation result. |
| | Timeout (ms): backend request timeout. The default value is 5000 ms. |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------------|--|
| | Passthrough: Backend requests will be forwarded to the original API backend. To add header parameters to backend requests, click Add Parameter. |
| Downgrade Parameter Settings | Determine whether to enable downgrade parameter configuration. After this option is enabled, custom rules take precedence over the default triggering conditions and downgrade settings configured above. |
| | If a custom rule is matched, the triggering conditions and downgrade settings defined in the rule are applied. If the matched custom rule contains no triggering condition or downgrade settings, the default settings in Trigger Configuration and Backend Downgrade will be applied. |
| | If no custom rule is matched, the default settings will be applied. |
| Parameters | Define parameters for rule matching. |
| | • Parameter Location : position of a parameter in API requests. |
| | Parameter Name: name of a parameter used for rule matching. |
| | By default, the system provides the reqPath (request path) and method (request method) parameters. Click Add Parameter to add parameters. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Rules | Customize matching rules for the circuit breaker. Click Add Rule to add rules. The system matches rules from top to bottom. Adjust the rule priority by moving the rules up or down. |
| | Conditions: Click ∠ to set condition expressions. If there are three or more expressions, you can layer them by clicking Set Lower Level. |
| | - =: equal to |
| | - !=: not equal to |
| | pattern: regular expression |
| | enum: enumerated values. Separate them with commas (,). |
| | For details about how to configure the triggering conditions and backend downgrade, see the instructions for the default settings above. |
| | Example: You have enabled Downgrade Parameter Settings and added rules rule01 and rule02 in sequence. And you have disabled Trigger Configuration and enabled Backend Downgrade for rule01 , and have enabled both options for rule02 . With these settings, the circuit breaker first checks whether the conditions of rule01 are met. If yes, the circuit breaker is turned on based on the default settings because no triggering condition has been defined in rule01 , and backend downgrade configured in rule01 is executed. If no, the check is continued for rule02 . |

Example Script

```
"breaker_condition":{
    "breaker_type":"timeout",
    "breaker_mode":"counter",
    "unhealthy_threshold":30,
    "time_window":15,
    "open_breaker_time":15,
    "unhealthy_percentage":51,
    "min_call_threshold":20
},
    "scope":"share",
    "downgrade_default":{
    "type":"http",
    "passthrough_infos":null,
    "func_info":null,
    "mock_info":null,
    "http_info":{
        "isVpc":false,
        "vpc_channel_id":"",
        "address":"10.10.10.10.10",
        "scheme":"HTTP",
        "method":"GET",
        "path":"/demo",
```

```
"timeout":5000
    "http_vpc_info":null
  },
"downgrade_parameters":[
  {
    "name":"reqPath",
    ""path",
   "type":"path",
"value":"path",
   "disabled":true,
    "focused":true,
    "id":"92002eqbpilg6g"
    "name":"method",
   "type":"method",
   "value":"method",
    "disabled":true,
    "focused":true,
   "id":"tuvxetsdqvcos8"
  }],
  "downgrade_rules":[
  {
   "rule_name":"rule-test1",
    "parameters":[
     "reqPath",
     "method"
    "match_regex":"[\"reqPath\",\"==\",\"/test\"]",
    "downgrade_backend":{
     "type":"mock",
     "passthrough_infos":null,
     "func_info":null,
     "mock_info":{
       "status_code":200,
       "result_content":"{status: ok}",
       "headers":[]
     "http_info":null,
     "http_vpc_info":null
    "breaker_condition":{
     "breaker_type":"timeout",
"breaker_mode":"percentage",
     "unhealthy_threshold":30,
     "time_window":15,
     "open_breaker_time":15,
     "unhealthy_percentage":51,
     "min_call_threshold":20
}]
}
```

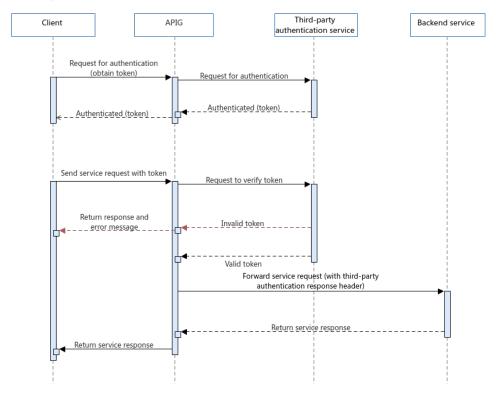
3.7 Third-Party Authorizer

You can configure your own service to authenticate API requests. APIG first invokes this service for authentication, and then invokes the backend service after receiving a success response.

□ NOTE

If your gateway does not support this policy, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway to the latest version.

The following figure shows the principle of third-party authentication. After binding a third-party authentication policy to an API, call the API by referring to Calling APIs.



Configuration Parameters

Table 3-7 Configuration parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Load Balance Channel | Whether to connect a third-party authentication service using a load balance channel. |
| | Configure: Select a load balance channel. |
| | Skip: Enter the path of the authentication service. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Backend URL | Method GET, POST, PUT, and HEAD are supported. Protocol HTTP or HTTPS. HTTPS is recommended for transmitting important or sensitive data. Load Balance Channel (if applicable) Set this parameter only if a load balance channel is used. Select a load balance channel. If no required channel is available, click Create Load Balance Channel to create one. |
| | Backend Address (if applicable) Set this parameter if no load balance channel is used. Enter the access address of the authentication service in the format of <i>Host:Port. Host</i> indicates the IP address or domain name for accessing the authentication service. If no port is specified, ports 80 and 443 are used by default for HTTP and |
| | HTTPS, respectively. NOTE Only IPv4 addresses are supported. Path Path (URL) of the authentication service. |
| Host Header | Set this parameter only if a load balance channel is used. Define a host header for requests to be sent to cloud servers associated with the load balance channel. By default, the original host header in each request is used. |
| Timeout (ms) | Timeout of the authentication service. It cannot exceed the max. timeout of the backend service. View the timeout limit on the Parameters tab of the gateway details page. |
| Brute Force Threshold | IP addresses whose number of third-party authentication failure attempts within 5 minutes exceeds this threshold will be blocked. They will be unblocked after 5 minutes. |
| | For example, if an IP address has failed third-party authentication more than the configured threshold in the third minute, the address is blocked, and will be unblocked after 2 minutes. |
| Identity Sources | Parameters to obtain from the original API requests for third-party authentication. Max. 10 headers and 10 query strings. If not specified, all headers and query strings in the original requests will be used. |

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Relaxed Mode | When this option is enabled, APIG accepts client requests even when your authentication service cannot connect or returns an error code starting with "5". |
| Allow Original Request Body | When this option is enabled, the original request body is included for authentication. |
| Request Body Size (bytes) | Available only when Allow Original Request Body is enabled. The value cannot exceed the max. request body size of the gateway. View the request body size limit on the Parameters tab of the gateway details page. |
| Allow Original Request Path | When this option is enabled, the original request path is added to the end of the authentication request path. |
| Return Response | When this option is enabled, the authentication response is returned on failure. |
| Allowed Response Headers | Headers to obtain from the authentication response and send to the backend service, when the authentication is successful. Max. 10 headers. |
| Simple Authentication | When this option is enabled, status codes starting with "2" indicate successful authentication. |
| Authentication Result | Available only when Simple Authentication is disabled. Responses whose headers contain these parameters with the same values indicate successful authentication. |
| Blacklist/Whitelist | When this option is enabled, whether API requests require third-party authentication depends on the configured blacklist or whitelist rules. |
| Туре | Whitelist API requests matching the whitelist rules do not require third-party authentication. Blacklist API requests matching the blacklist rules require third-party authentication. |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| Parameters | Define parameters for rule matching. |
| | Parameter Location: the location of a parameter used for rule matching. |
| | path: API request URI. This parameter is configured by default. |
| | method: API request method. This parameter is configured by default. |
| | header: the key of a request header. |
| | query: the key of a query string. |
| | system: a system parameter. |
| | Parameter: the name of a parameter to match the specified value in a rule. |
| Rules | Define conditions for rule matching. |
| | Click Add Rule and edit the rule name and conditions. In the Condition Expressions dialog box, select a parameter and operator, and enter a value. |
| | • =: equal to |
| | • !=: not equal to |
| | pattern: regular expression |
| | enum: enumerated values. Separate them with commas (,). |

Example Script

```
"auth_request": {
 "method": "GET",
"protocol": "HTTPS",
 "url_domain": "192.168.10.10",
 "timeout": 5000,
 "path": "/",
"vpc_channel_enabled": false,
 "vpc_channel_info": null
},
"custom_forbid_limit": 100,
"cadu": {
 "enabled": true,
 "max_body_size": 1000
},
"auth_downgrade_enabled": true,
"carry_path_enabled": true,
"return_resp_body_enabled": false,
"carry_resp_headers": [],
"simple_auth_mode_enabled": true,
"match_auth": null,
"rule_enabled": false,
"rule_type": "allow"
```

3.8 Request Throttling

Request throttling limits the number of times APIs can be called by a user or app within a specific time period to protect backend services. The throttling can be down to the minute or second. To ensure service continuity of an API, create a request throttling policy for the API.

Usage Guidelines

- Adding a request throttling policy to an API means binding them to each other. An API can be bound with only one request throttling policy for a given environment, but each request throttling policy can be bound to multiple APIs.
- For APIs not bound with a request throttling policy, the throttling limit is the value of **ratelimit_api_limits** set on the **Parameters** page of the gateway.

Configuration Parameters

Table 3-8 Parameter description

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Name | Request throttling policy name. |
| Туре | API-based or API-shared request throttling. |
| | API-specific: Request throttling is based on every API to which the policy is bound. |
| | API-sharing: Request throttling is based on all APIs as a whole to which the policy is bound. |
| Period | For how long you want to limit the number of API calls. This parameter can be used together with the following parameters: |
| | Max. API Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called within a specific period. |
| | Max. User Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by a user within a specific period. |
| | Max. Credential Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by a credential within a specific period. |
| | Max. IP Address Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by an IP address within a specific period. |
| Max. API Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called within the specified period. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Max. User Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by a user within the specified period. This limit only applies to APIs that are accessed through app or IAM authentication. |
| | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. API Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| | If there are many users under your account that access an API, the request throttling limits of the API will apply to all these users. |
| Max. Credential Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by a credential within the specified period. This limit only applies to APIs that are accessed through appauthentication. |
| | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. User Requests or Max. API Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| Max. IP Address Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by an IP address within the specified period. |
| | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. API Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| Description | Description of the request throttling policy. |

Follow-Up Operations

- To control the traffic of a credential, bind a request throttling policy to the credential by referring to Binding a Request Throttling Policy to a Credential. Traffic of the credential is limited by the excluded app threshold, while traffic of APIs and users are still limited by the request throttling policy.
- To control the traffic of a tenant, bind a request throttling policy to the tenant by referring to Binding a Request Throttling Policy to a Tenant. Traffic of the tenant is limited by the excluded tenant threshold, while traffic of APIs and users are still limited by the request throttling policy.

Binding a Request Throttling Policy to a Credential

You have created a credential or obtained a credential ID from other tenants.

- **Step 1** On the request throttling policy details page, click the **Excluded Apps** tab.
- Step 2 Click Select Excluded App.
- **Step 3** Select an app to exclude. You can use one of the following methods:
 - To select an existing credential, click **Existing**, select a credential, and enter a threshold.

 To select a credential of other tenants, click Cross-tenant, and enter the credential ID and a threshold.

□ NOTE

Excluded app thresholds take precedence over the value of Max. Credential Requests. For example, a request throttling policy has been configured, with Max. API Requests being 10, Max. Credential Requests being 3, Period being 1 minute, and two excluded apps (max. 2 API requests for app A and max. 4 API requests for app B). If the request throttling policy is bound to an API, apps A and B can access the API 2 and 4 times within 1 minute, respectively.

----End

Binding a Request Throttling Policy to a Tenant

- **Step 1** On the request throttling policy details page, click the **Excluded Tenants** tab.
- Step 2 Click Select Excluded Tenant.
- **Step 3** Enter the tenant information.

Table 3-9 Excluded tenant configuration

| _ | |
|-----------|--|
| Parameter | Description |
| Tenant ID | Account ID or project ID. For details, see the description about Excluded Tenants in Table 3-4 . |
| Threshold | The maximum number of times an API can be called by the tenant within a specified period. |
| | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. API Requests. |

Step 4 Click OK.

Excluded tenant thresholds take precedence over the value of Max. User Requests.

For example, a request throttling policy has been configured, with Max. API Requests being 10, Max. User Requests being 3, Period being 1 minute, and two excluded tenants (max. 2 API requests for tenant A and max. 4 API requests for tenant B). If the request throttling policy is bound to an API, tenants A and B can access the API 2 and 4 times within 1 minute, respectively.

----End

3.9 Access Control

Access control policies are a type of security measures provided by APIG. You can use them to allow or deny API access from specific IP addresses, account names, or account IDs.

Access control policies take effect for an API only if they have been bound to the API.

Usage Guidelines

- An API can be bound only with one access control policy of the same restriction type in an environment, but each access control policy can be bound to multiple APIs.
- Gateways created after December 31, 2022 support API access control by account ID. If you need to use this function on dedicated gateways created earlier, contact customer service.

Configuration Parameters

Table 3-10 Parameter description

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| Name | Access control policy name. |
| Туре | Type of the source from which API calls are to be controlled. |
| | IP address: Control API access by IP address. Account name: Control IAM authentication-based API access by account name, not IAM user name. |
| | Account ID: Control IAM authentication–based API access by account ID, not IAM user ID. |
| | NOTE |
| | An API can be bound to two types of access control policies: account name and account ID. If both a blacklist and whitelist exist, API requests are verified only against the whitelist. If only a blacklist or whitelist exists, the account name and account ID verification results follow the AND logic. |
| | An API can be bound to three types of access control policies: IP address, account name, and account ID. IP addresses and accounts are in the AND relationship. Failure in verifying either of them will result in an API access failure. The same judgment logic applies to an API whether it is bound with a policy that controls access from specific IP address and account names or from specific IP addresses and account IDs. |
| Effect | Options: Allow and Deny. |
| | Use this parameter along with Type to control access from certain IP addresses, account names, or account IDs to an API. |
| IP Address | Required only when Type is set to IP address . |
| | IP addresses and IP address ranges that are allowed or not allowed to access an API. |
| | NOTE You can set a maximum of 100 IP addresses respectively to allow or deny access. |
| Account | Required only when Type is set to Account name . |
| Name | Enter the account names that are allowed or forbidden to access an API. Use commas (,) to separate multiple account names. |
| | Click the username in the upper right corner of the console and choose My Credentials to obtain the account name. |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------|--|
| Account ID | Required only when Type is set to Account ID . |
| | Enter the account IDs that are allowed or forbidden to access an API. Use commas (,) to separate multiple account IDs. |
| | Click the username in the upper right corner of the console and choose My Credentials to obtain the account ID. |

3.10 Signature Keys

Signature keys are used by backend services to verify the identity of APIG.

A signature key consists of a key and secret, and can be used only after being bound to an API. When an API bound with a signature key is called, APIG adds signature details to the API request. The backend service of the API signs the request in the same way, and verifies the identity of APIG by checking whether the signature is consistent with that in the **Authorization** header sent by APIG.

Usage Guidelines

An API can only be bound with one signature key in a given environment, but each signature key can be bound to multiple APIs.

Procedure

Set a signature key for APIG.

Set a signature key for APIG.

Set a signature key for the backend service.

Figure 3-1 Signature key process flow

- 1. Create a signature key on the APIG console.
- 2. Bind the signature key to an API.
- 3. APIG sends signed requests containing a signature in the **Authorization** header to the backend service. The backend service can use different programming languages (Java, Go, Python, JavaScript, C#, PHP, C++, and C) to sign each request, and check whether the two signatures are consistent.

Configuration Parameters

Table 3-11 Parameter description

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Name | Signature key name. |
| Туре | Authentication type. Options: HMAC , Basic auth , AES , and Public key . |
| | Public key is available only if public_key_enable has been turned on on the Parameters page of the gateway. |
| Signature Algorithm | Select an AES signature algorithm. Options: • aes-128-cfb • aes-256-cfb |
| Key | Set the key based on the signature key type you have selected. |
| | If Type is HMAC , enter the key of the key pair used for app authentication. |
| | If Type is Basic auth , enter the username used for basic authentication. |
| | If Type is set to AES, enter the key used for AES authentication. |
| | If Type is Public key, enter the public key used for authentication. |
| Secret | Enter the secret information based on the key type you have selected. |
| | If Type is HMAC , enter the secret of the key pair used for app authentication. |
| | • If Type is Basic auth , enter the password used for basic authentication. |
| | • If Type is set to AES , enter the vector used for AES authentication. |
| | • If Type is Public key , enter the private key used for authentication. |
| Confirm Secret | Enter the secret again. |

Verifying the Signing Result

Sign each backend request by following the instructions in **Signature Algorithm**, and check whether the backend signature is consistent with the signature in the **Authorization** header of the API request.

3.11 Custom Authorizers

APIG supports custom authentication of both frontend and backend requests.

- Frontend custom authentication: If you already have an authentication system, you can configure it in a function and then create a custom authorizer by using the function to authenticate API requests.
- Backend custom authentication: You can create a custom authorizer to authenticate requests for different backend services, eliminating the need to customize APIs for different authentication systems and simplifying API development. You only need to create a function-based custom authorizer in APIG to connect to your backend authentication system.

■ NOTE

Custom authentication is implemented using FunctionGraph and not supported if FunctionGraph is unavailable in the selected region.

For details about custom authentication, see the API Gateway Developer Guide.

The following figure shows the process of calling APIs through custom authentication.

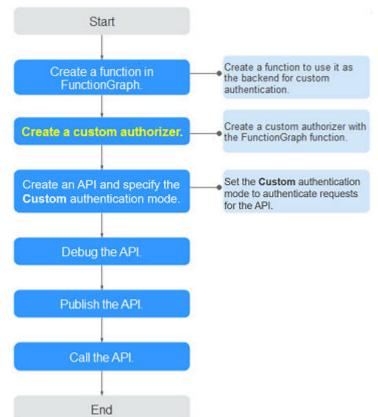


Figure 3-2 Calling APIs through custom authentication

Prerequisites

You have created a function in FunctionGraph.

Creating a Custom Authorizer

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Policies**.
- **Step 4** On the **Custom Authorizers** page, click **Create Custom Authorizer**.

Configure custom authorizer parameters.

Table 3-12 Parameters for creating a custom authorizer

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Name | Authorizer name. |
| Туре | Frontend: Authenticates access to APIs. Backend: Authenticates access to backend services. |
| Function URN | Select a FunctionGraph function. |
| Version/Alias | Select a function version or alias. For details, see FunctionGraph User Guide . |
| Max. Cache Age (s) | The time for caching authentication results. Value 0 means that authentication results will not be cached. The maximum value is 3600 . |
| Identity Sources | Request parameters used for authentication. This parameter is mandatory only if you set Type to Frontend , and Max. Cache Age (s) is greater than 0 . When the cache is used, this parameter is used as a search criterion to query authentication results. |
| Send Request Body | Determine whether to send the body of each API request to the authentication function. If you enable this option, the request body will be sent to the authentication function in the same way as the headers and query strings. |
| User Data | Customized request parameters to be used together with Identity Sources when APIG invokes a function. |

Step 5 Click OK.

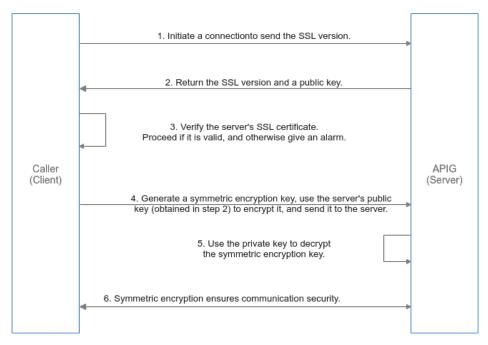
----End

3.12 SSL Certificates

API groups that contain HTTPS-compatible APIs must have their independent domain names bound with SSL certificates. SSL certificates are used for data encryption and identity verification, and support both one-way and two-way authentication.

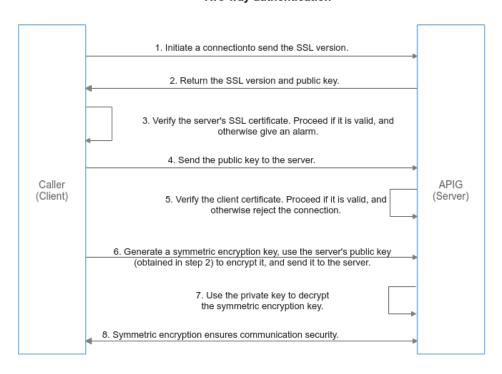
 One-way authentication: When connecting to the server, a client verifies whether the server is correct.

One-way authentication



• Two-way authentication: When connecting to a server, a client verifies the server and the server also verifies the client.

Two-way authentication



Prerequisites

Only SSL certificates in PEM format are supported.

• SSL certificates support only the RSA, ECDSA, and DSA encryption algorithms.

Adding an SSL Certificate

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Policies**.
- **Step 4** On the **SSL Certificates** tab, click **Create SSL Certificate**.

Table 3-13 SSL certificate configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------|--|
| Name | Enter an SSL certificate name that conforms to specific rules to facilitate search. |
| Gateways Covered | Current: The certificate will be displayed only for the current gateway. All: The certificate will be displayed for all gateways. |
| Content | SSL certificate content in PEM format. Open the target PEM certificate file using Notepad or other tools, and copy the certificate content to Content . If the certificate is not in PEM format, convert it to this format. |
| Key | SSL certificate key in PEM format. Open the KEY or PEM private key file using Notepad or other tools, and copy the private key to Key . |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| CA | For two-way authentication, you need to enter the CA certificate to verify both the server and client certificates. After the CA certificate is uploaded, the independent domain name needs to be bound to an SSL certificate to enable two-way authentication. Open the CA certificate file (.pem format) corresponding to the preceding certificate content as a text file and copy the CA content to CA. |
| | If the certificate is not in PEM format, convert it to this format. |
| | NOTE If your gateway does not support CA certificates, contact customer service to upgrade the gateway. |

Step 5 Click **OK**. The SSL certificate is added.

----End

Converting Certificate Format to PEM

| Format | Converting with OpenSSL |
|---------|---|
| CER/CRT | Rename the certificate file cert.crt cert.pem . |
| PFX | Run the private key export command. For example, run the following command to convert cert.pfx into key.pem: openssl pkcs12 -in cert.pfx -nocerts -out key.pem |
| | Run the certificate export command. For example, run the following command to convert cert.pfx into cert.pem: openssl pkcs12 -in cert.pfx -nokeys -out cert.pem |
| P7B | 1. Run the certificate conversion command. For example, run the following command to convert cert.p7b into cert.cer: openssl pkcs7 -print_certs -in cert.p7b -out cert.cer |
| | 2. Rename the certificate file cert.cer cert.pem . |

| Format | Converting with OpenSSL |
|--------|---|
| DER | Run the private key export command. For example, run the following command to convert privatekey.der into privatekey.pem: openssl rsa -inform DER -outform PEM -in privatekey.der -out privatekey.pem |
| | Run the certificate export command. For example, run the following command to convert cert.cer into cert.pem: openssl x509 -inform der -in cert.cer -out cert.pem |

Updating an SSL Certificate

To update an SSL certificate, go to the certificate list page, click **Modify** in the **Operation** column of the target certificate, and then modify it.

If the updated SSL certificate has been bound to an independent domain name, the client authentication (HTTPS two-way authentication) is enabled by default when a CA certificate is added to the updated content.

Follow-Up Operations

After creating a certificate, **bind it** to an independent name of an API group.

3.13 Load Balance Channels

Load balance channels expose your services through **dedicated gateways**. and are accessed through subnets in VPCs for lower latency. They balance the loads of backend services as server channels or automatically synchronize service node changes as microservice channels.

After creating a load balance channel, you can configure it for an API of an HTTP/ HTTPS backend service.

For example, six ECSs have been deployed, and a load balance channel has been created to reach ECS 01 and ECS 04. In this situation, APIG can access these two ECSs through the channel.

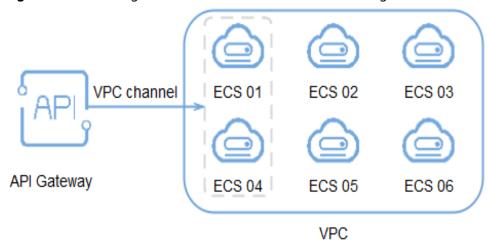


Figure 3-3 Accessing ECSs in a load balance channel through APIG

Prerequisites

- You have the **VPC Administrator** permission.
- To configure a server channel, ensure that you have created cloud servers that can communicate with APIG.
- To configure a microservice channel, ensure that you have created a cluster (a CCE cluster of VPC network model or a Turbo cluster) and a workload

NOTICE

- If your gateway does not support microservice channels, contact technical support to upgrade the gateway to the latest version.
- The CCE cluster and the target gateway must be in the same VPC or connected to each other using a VPC peering connection. If the network is connected through the same VPC (with extended network segments) or a VPC peering connection, you need to add the container CIDR block of the cluster to **Routes** on the gateway details page.
- The workload must have a pod label configured. This label will be used to identify the workload, for example, a specific version of the workload, during microservice configuration. For details, see Pod Labels and Annotations.
 - Configure a pod label when you create a workload by clicking Create
 Workload. On the workload creation page, in the Advanced Settings
 > Labels and Annotations > Pod Label area, configure the app label.
 - Configure a pod label when you create a workload by creating a YAML file. For example: app=service01.

```
spec:
replicas: 2
selector:
matchLabels:
app: 'service01'
```

Creating a Load Balance Channel

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Policies**.
- Step 4 Click the Load Balance Channels tab.
- **Step 5** Click **Create Load Balance Channel** and configure basic information.

Table 3-14 Basic information

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Name | Channel name. |
| Port | The host port of the channel, that is, the port of your backend services. Range: 1–65535 |
| Routing Algorithm | The algorithm to be used to forward requests to cloud servers you select. The following routing algorithms are available: • WRR: weighted round robin • WLC: weighted least connection • SH: source hashing • URI hashing |
| Туре | Server: API requests will be distributed to ECSs or specified server IP addresses in the channel. For details, see Step 6. Microservice: API requests will be distributed to microservice IP addresses in the channel. For details, see Step 7. |

Step 6 Configure servers.

□ NOTE

Load balance channels support private network load balancers. You can specify server addresses.

- Select cloud servers
 - a. Click Create Server Group.

In the displayed dialog box, enter server group information and click **OK**.

Table 3-15 Server group parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| Group Name | Enter a server group name. Using naming rules facilitates future search. |
| Weight | Enter the weight of the server group. The larger the weight, the more requests can be forwarded to the servers in the group. |
| Description | Enter a brief description of the server group. |

b. Click Add Cloud Server.

In the displayed dialog box, select a subnet, select the cloud servers to be added, and click **OK**.

- c. After the configuration is complete, configure health check.
- Specify IP addresses
 - a. Click Create Server Group.

In the displayed dialog box, enter server group information and click **OK**. Configure parameters according to **Table 3-15**.

b. Click Add Backend Server Address and enter a backend server address.

Table 3-16 Backend server parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Backend Server Address | Backend server IP address. |
| Standby Node | If you enable this option, the backend server serves as a standby node. It works only when all non-standby nodes are faulty. |
| Port | Access port number of the backend server. If the port number is 0 , the port of the load balance channel is used. |
| Server Status | Specify whether to enable the server. Requests are distributed to the server only if it is enabled. |

c. After the configuration is complete, configure health check.

Step 7 Configure a microservice and a server group.



1. Configure microservice information according to the following table.

Table 3-17 Microservice configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|--|
| Microservice Type | Fixed as Cloud Container Engine (CCE). |
| Cluster | Select a cluster. Click View CCE Console to view the available clusters. |
| Namespace | Namespace of the cluster, which is an abstract collection of resources and objects. |
| Workload Type | Deployment: Deployments do not store any data or status while they are running. |
| | StatefulSet: StatefulSets store data and statuses while they are running. |
| | DaemonSet: DaemonSets ensure that only one pod runs on all or some nodes. When a node is added to a cluster, a new pod is also added for the node. When a node is removed from a cluster, the pod is also reclaimed. |
| | NOTE If a DaemonSet is deleted, all pods created by it will be deleted. |
| | For details about these workload types, see Overview. |
| Service Label Key | Pod label of a workload. The service label name is |
| Service Label Value | the pod label key and the service label value is the pod label value. |
| | For details about pod labels, see Labels and Annotations. |

2. Configure a server group.

Click **Add Server Group** and set required parameters.

Table 3-18 Server group parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Server Group Name | Same as the service label value by default. Modify the name if necessary. |
| Weight | Default value: 1; range: 0–100. NOTE If Routing Algorithm is set to URI hashing, the weight is 1 by default and cannot be changed. |
| Backend Service Port | By default, the port of the load balance channel is used. |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Workload Name | Select a CCE workload. |
| Tag | Pod label of a workload. If a workload cannot be identified by certain service label name and value, select another pod label to specify the workload. |
| | For example, workloads 01 and 02 have the same app label, but they can be identified using the version or test_name tag. |
| | Workload 01 |
| | spec: replicas: 2 selector: matchLabels: app: 'app01' version: 'v1' |
| | Workload 02 |
| | spec: replicas: 2 selector: matchLabels: app: 'app01' test_name: 'test_value' |

3. After the configuration is complete, **configure health check**.

Step 8 Configure health checks.

Table 3-19 Basic information

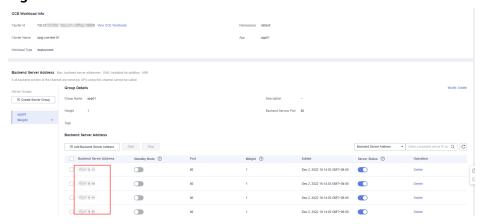
| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|--|
| Protocol | The protocol used to perform health checks on cloud servers associated with the channel. Options: TCP HTTP |
| | HTTPS |
| | Default value: TCP . |
| Two-Way Authentication | Set this parameter only when Protocol is set to HTTPS. Determine whether to allow APIG to authenticate the API backend service. For details about how to configure the certificate for two-way authentication, see Procedure. |
| Path | Set this parameter only when Protocol is not set to TCP. The destination path for health checks. |
| Method | GET HEAD |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Check Port | The destination port for health checks. If this parameter is not specified, the port of the load balance channel is used by default. |
| Healthy Threshold | The number of consecutive successful checks required for a cloud server to be considered healthy. Range: 2–10. Default value: 2 |
| Unhealthy Threshold | The number of consecutive failed checks required for a cloud server to be considered unhealthy. Range: 2–10. Default value: 5. |
| Timeout (s) | The timeout used to determine whether a health check has failed. Unit: s. Range: 2–30. Default value: 5 . |
| Interval (s) | The interval between consecutive checks. Unit: s. Range: 5–300. Default value: 10 . |
| Response Codes | Set this parameter only when Protocol is not set to TCP. |
| | The HTTP codes used to check for a successful response from a target. |

Step 9 Click Finish.

For a microservice channel, adding, deleting, or modifying a pod IP address of the CCE workload will also change the backend server address of the channel.

Figure 3-4 Microservice load balance channel details



----End

Follow-Up Operations

1. Ensure that a route has been added to the gateway. To connect a CCE workload to a gateway through the same VPC (with extended network segments) or a VPC peering connection, you need to add a route.

- a. Log in to the CCE console, choose **Clusters**, and click the name of the created CCE cluster.
- b. In the **Networking Configuration** area on the **Cluster Details** page, view and record the container CIDR block.
- c. Log in to the APIG console and click the gateway name on the **Gateways** page.
- d. In the **Routes** area on the **Gateway Information** page, check whether the added route is consistent with the container CIDR block. If not, add the correct route.
- 2. **Create APIs** to expose backend services deployed in the workload.

Related Documents

Selectively Exposing CCE Workloads

3.14 Managing Environments

An API can be called in different environments, such as production, testing, and development environments. RELEASE is the default environment provided by APIG.

Creating an Environment

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Policies**.
- **Step 4** Click the **Environments** tab.
- **Step 5** Click **Create Environment** and set the environment information.

Table 3-20 Environment information

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Name | Environment name. |
| Description | Description of the environment. |

Step 6 Click OK.

After the environment is created, it is displayed in the environment list.

----End

Accessing an Environment

You can call an API in the RELEASE environment by using a RESTful API. To access the API in other environments, add the **X-Stage** header to the request to specify an environment name. For example, add **X-Stage:DEVELOP** to the request header to access an API in the **DEVELOP** environment.

□ NOTE

APIG does not support API debugging with environment variables.

Follow-Up Operations

After creating an environment, **publish APIs** in the environment so that they can be called by API callers.

4 Credentials

4.1 Creating a Credential and Binding It to APIs

For APIs that use app authentication, create credentials to generate credential IDs and key/secret pairs. When calling such an API, bind a credential to the API, use the key/secret pair to replace that in the SDK so that APIG can authenticate your identity. For details about app authentication, see the **Developer Guide**.

□ NOTE

- APIs that use IAM authentication or require no authentication do not need credentials.
- You can create a maximum of 50 credentials for each gateway.

Creating a Credential

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **Credentials**.
- **Step 4** Click **Create Credential** and set credential information.

Table 4-1 Credential information

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| Name | Credential name. |
| Description | Description about the credential. |

■ NOTE

You can customize AppKeys (keys) and AppSecrets (secrets). An AppKey is an automatically generated identifier, which is globally unique. You are not advised to customize one unless it is necessary.

Step 5 Click OK.

- After the credential is created, its name and ID are displayed on the Credentials page.
- Click the credential name and view the key and secret.

----End

Binding a Credential to APIs

- **Step 1** On the **Credentials** page, click the name of the target credential.
- Step 2 In the APIs area, click Bind to APIs.
- **Step 3** Select an environment, API group, and APIs.
- Step 4 Click OK.

To unbind an API, click **Unbind** in the row that contains the API.

□ NOTE

A credential can be bound to multiple APIs that use app authentication, and each such API can be bound with multiple credentials.

----End

4.2 Resetting Secret

Reset the secret of a credential as necessary. After resetting, the original secret becomes invalid and APIs to which the credential is bound cannot be called. To call the APIs, update the secret in the SDK. The key is unique and cannot be reset.

Procedure

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **Credentials**.
- **Step 4** Click the name of the target credential.
- Step 5 Click Reset Secret.
- Step 6 Click OK.

----End

4.3 Adding an AppCode for Simple Authentication

AppCodes are identity credentials of a credential used to call APIs in simple authentication mode. In this mode, the **X-Apig-AppCode** parameter (whose value is an AppCode on the credential details page) is added to the HTTP request header for quick response. APIG verifies only the AppCode and the request content does not need to be signed.

When an API is called using app authentication and simple authentication is enabled for the API, the key and secret can be used to sign and verify the API request. AppCodes can also be used for simple authentication.

□ NOTE

- For security purposes, simple authentication only supports API calls over HTTPS.
- You can create a maximum of five AppCodes for each credential.

Generating an AppCode

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a dedicated gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **Credentials**.
- **Step 4** Click the name of the target credential.
- Step 5 Under AppCodes, click Add AppCode.
- **Step 6** Configure AppCode information and click **OK**.

Table 4-2 AppCode configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|--|
| AppCode Type | Select the method for generating an AppCode. |
| | Automatically generated: An AppCode is generated by the system. |
| | Custom: Specify an AppCode. |
| AppCode | Enter an AppCode if you set AppCode Type to Custom . |

----End

Using AppCode for Simple Authentication of API Requests

Step 1 When creating an API, set **Authentication Mode** to **App** and enable **Simple Authentication**.

■ NOTE

After you enable simple authentication for an existing API, you need to publish the API again to make the configuration take effect.

- **Step 2** Bind a credential to the API.
- **Step 3** When sending a request, add the **X-Apig-AppCode** parameter to the request header and omit the request signature.

For example, when using curl, add the **X-Apig-AppCode** parameter to the request header and set the parameter value to the **generated AppCode**.

curl -X GET "https://api.exampledemo.com/testapi" -H "content-type: application/json" -H "host: api.exampledemo.com" -H "X-Apig-AppCode: xhrJVJKABSOxc7d*******FZL4gSHEXkCMQC"

----End

4.4 Binding a Credential Quota Policy

A credential quota policy limits the number of API calls that a credential can make during a specified period.

Procedure

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **Credentials**.
- Step 4 Click the name of the target credential.
- Step 5 In the Credential Quota Policies area, click Bind.
- **Step 6** Specify the policy type.
 - Existing policy: Select a policy.
 - New policy: Configure a policy by referring to Table 4-3.

Table 4-3 Credential quota policy configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Name | Enter a credential quota policy name that conforms to specific rules to facilitate search. |
| Effective On | Time when the quota policy takes effect. For example, if Effective On is set to Aug 8, 2020 05:05:00 and Period is set to 1 hour, the quota policy takes effect on Aug 8, 2020 05:05:00. The period from the fifth minute of an hour to the fifth minute of the next hour is a cycle, for example, 05:05:00-06:05:00. |
| Period | Period in which the quota policy is applied. The unit can be second, minute, hour, or day. This parameter must be used along with Max. API Requests to limit the total number of times an API can be called by a client within the specified period. |
| Max. API Requests | The maximum number of times that an API can be called by a client. This parameter must be used along with Period . |
| Description | Description about the credential quota policy. |

Step 7 After the configuring is complete, click **OK**.

----End

4.5 Binding an Access Control Policy

As a protection mechanism for backend services, access control policies control the client (API caller) IP addresses that can access APIs. You can bind an access control policy to allow or deny access of specified IP addresses to an API.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **Credentials**.
- **Step 4** Click the name of the target credential.
- **Step 5** In the **Access Control Policy** area, click **Bind**.
- **Step 6** Configure the policy information.

Table 4-4 Access control policy configuration

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| Effect | Access control type. Options: Allow: Only clients with specified IP addresses are allowed to call APIs to which the credential is bound. Deny: Clients with specified IP addresses are not allowed to call APIs to which the credential is bound. |
| IP Addresses | Click Add IP Address to add IP addresses. |

Step 7 After the configuring is complete, click **OK**.

----End

5 Monitoring & Analysis

5.1 API Monitoring

5.1.1 Monitoring Metrics

Introduction

This section describes the metrics that APIG reports to the Cloud Eye service. You can view metrics and alarms by using the Cloud Eye console.

Namespace

SYS.APIC

Metrics

Table 5-1 Metric description

| Metric ID | Metric Name | Description | Value Range | Monitored Object and Dimension | Monitori ng Period (Minute) |
|-----------|----------------|--|----------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| requests | Requests | Number of times that all APIs in a dedicated gateway have been called. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: dedicated API gateway Dimension: instance_id | 1 |

| Metric ID | Metric Name | Description | Value Range | Monitored Object and Dimension | Monitori ng Period (Minute) |
|---------------------|------------------------|--|-----------------|---|--------------------------------------|
| error_4xx | 4xx Errors | Number of times that all APIs in the dedicated gateway return a 4xx error. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: dedicated API gateway Dimension: instance_id | 1 |
| error_5xx | 5xx Errors | Number of times that all APIs in the dedicated gateway return a 5xx error. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: dedicated API gateway Dimension: instance_id | 1 |
| throttled_c alls | Throttled API Calls | Number of times that all APIs in the dedicated gateway have been throttled. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: dedicated API gateway Dimension: instance_id | 1 |
| avg_latenc y | Average Latency | Average latency of all APIs in the gateway. | ≥ 0 Unit: ms | Monitored object: dedicated API gateway Dimension: instance_id | 1 |
| max_laten cy | Maximum Latency | Maximum latency of all APIs in the gateway. | ≥ 0 Unit: ms | Monitored object: dedicated API gateway Dimension: instance_id | 1 |
| req_count | Requests | Number of times that an API has been called. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |

| Metric ID | Metric Name | Description | Value Range | Monitored Object and Dimension | Monitori ng Period (Minute) |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| req_count _2xx | 2xx Responses | Number of times that the API returns a 2xx response. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |
| req_count _4xx | 4xx Errors | Number of times that the API returns a 4xx error. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |
| req_count _5xx | 5xx Errors | Number of times that the API returns a 5xx error. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |
| req_count _error | Total Errors | Total number of errors returned by the API. | ≥ 0 | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |
| avg_latenc y | Average Latency | Average latency of the API. | ≥ 0 Unit: ms | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |
| max_laten cy | Maximum Latency | Maximum latency of the API. | ≥ 0 Unit: ms | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |
| input_thro ughput | Incoming Traffic | Incoming traffic of the API. | ≥ 0 Unit: Byte, KB, MB, or GB | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |
| output_thr oughput | Outgoing Traffic | Outgoing traffic of the API. | ≥ 0 Unit: Byte, KB, MB, or GB | Monitored object: API Dimension: api_id | 1 |

| Metric ID | Metric Name | Description | Value Range | Monitored Object and Dimension | Monitori ng Period (Minute) |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|---|------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| node_syst em_load | Node System Load | Load details of a gateway node on the data plane. 1 means low water level, 2 means medium water level, and 3 means high water level. | 1, 2, 3 Unit: count | Monitored object: gateway node Dimension: node_ip | 1 |
| node_cpu_ usage | Node CPU Usage | CPU usage details of a gateway node on the data plane. | ≥ 0 Unit: % | Monitored object: gateway node Dimension: node_ip | 1 |
| node_me mory_usa ge | Node Memory Usage | Memory usage details of a gateway node on the data plane. | ≥ 0 Unit: % | Monitored object: gateway node Dimension: node_ip | 1 |

Dimension

Table 5-2 Monitoring dimensions

| Key | Value |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| instance_id | Dedicated gateway |
| instance_id,node_ip | Dedicated gateway node |
| instance_id,api_id | API |

5.1.2 Creating Alarm Rules

Scenario

You can create alarm rules to monitor the status of your APIs.

An alarm rule consists of a rule name, monitored objects, metrics, alarm thresholds, monitoring interval, and notification.

Prerequisites

An API has been called.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 4** Click a group name.
- **Step 5** On the **Monitoring** area of the **APIs** tab, click **More** to access the Cloud Eye console. Then create an alarm rule. For details, see **Creating an Alarm Rule**.

----End

5.1.3 Viewing Metrics

Cloud Eye monitors the status of your APIs and allows you to view their metrics.

Viewing Metrics of an API

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Management** > **API Groups**.
- Step 4 Click a group name.
- **Step 5** In the left pane of the **APIs** tab, select an API.
- **Step 6** View metrics of the API in the **Monitoring** area.
- **Step 7** Click **More** to view more metrics on the Cloud Eye console.

□ NOTE

The monitoring data is retained for two days. To retain the data for a longer period, save it to an OBS bucket.

----End

Viewing Metrics of an API group

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Monitoring & Analysis > API Monitoring**.
- **Step 4** Select the target API group and view its metrics.

----End

5.2 Bandwidth Monitoring

APIG provides monitoring metrics about inbound and outbound bandwidth.

Prerequisites

Inbound and outbound access has been enabled for the target gateway. View the inbound and outbound addresses in the **gateway information**.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Monitoring & Analysis > Bandwidth Monitoring**.
- **Step 4** Configure the monitoring information according to the following table.

Table 5-3 Monitoring information

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| IP Address | Inbound or outbound IP address of a gateway. View the address in the gateway information . |
| Time range | Select 1h , 3h , 12h , 24h , or 7d , or click to specify a custom time range. In the upper right of each monitoring graph dynamically shows the maximum and minimum metric values in the specified time range. |
| Auto Refresh | If this option is enabled, data is automatically refreshed every minute. |
| Period | A cycle when data is aggregated to calculate the maximum, minimum, average, total, or variance value. |

----End

5.3 Log Analysis

This section describes how to obtain and analyze the API calling logs of a **dedicated** gateway.

Prerequisites

APIs have been called.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** Select a gateway at the top of the navigation pane.
- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **Monitoring & Analysis** > **Log Analysis**.
- **Step 4** Click **Configure Log Collection**, and change **Collect Logs** to enable log collection.
- **Step 5** Specify a log group and log stream, and click **OK**. For details about log groups and log streams, see **Log Management**.
- **Step 6** Click **Log Fields** to view the description of each log field. Then view and analyze logs by referring to the log field descriptions.
- **Step 7** To export logs, see **Log Transfer**.

Fields in access logs are separated using spaces. The following table describes each log field.

Table 5-4 Log field description

| No. | Field | Description |
|-----|----------------|--|
| 1 | remote_addr | Client IP address. |
| 2 | request_id | Request ID. |
| 3 | api_id | API ID |
| 4 | user_id | Project ID provided by a requester for IAM authentication. |
| 5 | app_id | App ID provided by a requester for app authentication. |
| 6 | time_local | Time when a request is received. |
| 7 | request_time | Request latency. |
| 8 | request_method | HTTP request method. |
| 9 | scheme | Request protocol. |

| No. | Field | Description |
|-----|--------------------------------|---|
| 10 | host | Domain name. |
| 11 | router_uri | Request URI. |
| 12 | server_protocol | Request protocol. |
| 13 | status | Response status code. |
| 14 | bytes_sent | Response size in bytes, including the status line, header, and body. |
| 15 | request_length | Request length in bytes, including the start line, header, and body. |
| 16 | http_user_agent | User agent ID. |
| 17 | http_x_forwarded_for | X-Forwarded-For header field. |
| 18 | upstream_addr | Backend address. |
| 19 | upstream_uri | Backend URI. |
| 20 | upstream_status | Backend response code. |
| 21 | upstream_connect_tim e | Time taken to establish a connection with the backend. |
| 22 | upstream_header_tim e | Duration from the start of a connection to the first byte received from the backend. |
| 23 | upstream_response_ti me | Duration from the start of a connection to the last byte received from the backend. |
| 24 | region_id | Region ID. |
| 25 | all_upstream_response _time | Duration from the start of a connection to the last byte received from the backend, in seconds. When a retry occurs, the value is the total time taken. |
| 26 | errorType | API request error type. Options: 0: non-throttling error 1: throttling error |
| 27 | auth_type | API authentication mode. |
| 28 | access_model1 | Authentication mode 1. |
| 29 | access_model2 | Authentication mode 2. Enabling two- factor authentication will use the custom authorizer ID. |

| No. | Field | Description |
|-----|----------------------------|--|
| 30 | inner_time | APIG internal processing duration, in seconds. |
| 31 | proxy_protocol_vni | VPC endpoint virtual network ID. |
| 32 | proxy_protocol_vpce_i d | VPC endpoint ID. |
| 33 | proxy_protocol_addr | Client IP address. |
| 34 | body_bytes_sent | API request body size, in bytes. |
| 35 | api_name | API name. |
| 36 | app_name | Name of the app used by a requester for authentication. |
| 37 | provider_app_id | App ID of an API. |
| 38 | provider_app_name | App name of an API. |
| 39 | custom_data_log1 | Custom log field 1. |
| 40 | custom_data_log2 | Custom log field 2. |
| 41 | custom_data_log3 | Custom log field 3. |
| 42 | custom_data_log4 | Custom log field 4. |
| 43 | custom_data_log5 | Custom log field 5. |
| 44 | custom_data_log6 | Custom log field 6. |
| 45 | custom_data_log7 | Custom log field 7. |
| 46 | custom_data_log8 | Custom log field 8. |
| 47 | custom_data_log9 | Custom log field 9. |
| 48 | custom_data_log10 | Custom log field 10. |
| 49 | response_source | Response source. Options: • local: APIG • remote: backend service |
| 50 | gzip_ratio | Ratio of the original response body size to the compressed response body size. |
| 51 | upstream_scheme | Backend protocol type. |
| 52 | group_id | Group ID. |
| 53 | apig_err_code | Gateway error code. |

----End

6 Gateway Management

6.1 Buying a Gateway

This section describes how to create a gateway. You can create APIs and use them to provide services only after a gateway is created.

Constraints on Buying a Gateway

There are some limitations on creating a gateway. If you cannot create a gateway or a gateway fails to be created, check the following items:

Gateway quota

By default, your account can be used to create five gateways in a project. To create more dedicated gateways, submit a service ticket to increase the quota.

Permissions

You must be assigned both the APIG Administrator and VPC Administrator roles or assigned the APIG FullAccess policy to create a gateway.

You can also be granted permissions using custom policies. For details, see **APIG Custom Policies**.

Number of available private IP addresses in the subnet

The basic, professional, enterprise, and platinum editions of APIG require 3, 5, 6, and 7 private IP addresses. A platinum X requires 4 more private IP addresses than the previous edition. Check that the subnet you choose has sufficient private IP addresses on the VPC console.

Network Environment

Workload

Gateways are deployed in VPCs. Cloud resources, such as Elastic Cloud Servers (ECSs), in the same workload can call APIs using the private IP address of the gateway deployed in the workload.

You are advised to deploy your gateways in the same workload as your other services to facilitate network configuration and secure network access.

◯ NOTE

VPCs (workloads) where gateways have been deployed cannot be changed.

EIP

To allow public inbound access to the APIs deployed in a gateway, create an Elastic IP (EIP) and bind it to the gateway.

◯ NOTE

For APIs whose backend services are deployed on a public network, APIG automatically generates an IP address for public outbound access, and you do not need to create an Elastic IP (EIP).

Security group

Similar to a firewall, a security group controls access to a gateway through a specific port and transmission of communication data from the gateway to a specific destination address. For security purposes, create inbound rules for the security group to allow access only on specific ports.

The security group bound to a gateway must meet the following requirements:

- Inbound access: To allow the APIs in the gateway to be accessed over public networks or from other security groups, configure inbound rules for the security group to allow access on ports 80 (HTTP) and 443 (HTTPS).
- Outbound access: If the backend service of an API is deployed on a public network or in another security group, add outbound rules for the security group to allow access to the backend service address through the API calling port.
- If the frontend and backend services of an API are bound with the same security group and VPC as the gateway, no inbound or outbound rules are needed to allow access through the preceding ports.

Procedure

Step 1 Go to the **Buy Gateway page**.

NOTE

- ELB load balancing is enabled by default after gateways are purchased in regions except
 LA-Mexico City1 and CN North-Beijing1. Gateways with load balancing enabled do not
 support security groups. To disable access from specific IP addresses, use access control
 policies.
- ELB functions as a load balancer for gateways, which support cross-VPC access. Gateways with public inbound access enabled are randomly assigned an EIP and cannot use an existing EIP.

Step 2 Set the gateway parameters by referring to the following table.

Table 6-1 API gateway parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------|---|
| Billing Mode | Billing mode of the dedicated gateway. Options: Pay- per-use . |

| Parameter | Description | |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| Region | A geographic area where the gateway will be deployed. Deploy the gateway in the same region as your other services to allow all services to communicate with each other through subnets within a workload. This reduces public bandwidth costs and network latency. | |
| AZ | A physical region where resources use independent power supplies and networks. Availability zones (AZs) are physically isolated but interconnected through an internal network. To enhance gateway availability, deploy the gateway in | |
| | multiple AZs. | |
| | APIG does not support gateway migration across AZs. | |
| Gateway Name | Gateway name. | |
| Edition | The basic, professional, enterprise, and platinum editions are available. The number of concurrent requests allowed varies depending on the gateway edition. For more information, see Specifications in th <i>API Gateway Service Overview</i> . NOTE Currently, platinum edition 2 and later are available only in CN-Hong Kong . | |
| Scheduled Maintenance | Time period when the gateway can be maintained. The technical support personnel will contact you before maintenance. | |
| | Select a time period with low service demands. | |
| Enterprise Project | Select an enterprise project to which the gateway belongs. This parameter is available only if your account is an enterprise account. | |
| | For details about resource usage, migration, and user permissions of enterprise projects, see the Enterprise Management User Guide. | |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------------|---|
| Public Inbound Access | Determine whether to allow the APIs created in the gateway to be called by external services using an EIP. To enable this function, assign an EIP to the dedicated gateway. You will need to pay for the EIP usage. NOTE • Gateways with public inbound access enabled in CN-Hong Kong, CN East-Shanghai1, and CN Southwest-Guiyang1 are randomly assigned an EIP and cannot use an existing EIP. Set a bandwidth that meets your service requirements for public inbound access. The bandwidth will be billed by hour based on the pricing of the EIP service. |
| | APIs in the gateway can be called using independent or debugging domain names. There is a limit on the number of times that APIs in an API group can be called per day using the debugging domain name. To overcome the limitation, bind independent domain names to the API group and ensure that the domain names have already been CNAMEd to the EIP of the gateway to which the API group belongs. For example, you have an HTTPS API (path: /apidemo) with public access enabled. The API can be called using "https://{domain}/apidemo", where {domain} indicates an independent domain name bound to the group of the API. The default port is 443. |
| Public Outbound Access | Determine whether to allow backend services of the APIs created in the gateway to be deployed on public networks. Set a bandwidth that meets your service requirements for public outbound access. The bandwidth will be billed by hour based on the pricing of the EIP service. |
| Network | Select a VPC and subnet for the dedicated gateway. Cloud resources (such as ECSs) within the same VPC can call APIs using the private IP address of the gateway. Deploy the gateway in the same VPC as your other services to facilitate network configuration and secure network access. |
| Security Group | Select a security group to control inbound and outbound access. If the backend service of an API is deployed on an external network, configure security group rules to allow access to the backend service address through the API calling port. NOTE If public inbound access is enabled, add inbound rules for the security group to allow access on ports 80 (HTTP) and 443 (HTTPS). |

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| Advanced Settings | Enable this option to set tags. Alternatively, set tags on the Tag Management Service (TMS) console by referring to Tag Management . |
| VPC Endpoint Service | Name of a VPC endpoint service to create when you buy the gateway. The gateway then can be accessed using the endpoint service. If a name is specified, the VPC endpoint service name |
| | to display on the VPC Endpoints tab will be in the format " <i>{region}.{Specified VPC endpoint service name}.{VPC endpoint service ID}</i> ". If no name is specified, the displayed name will be in the format " <i>{region}.apig.{VPC endpoint service ID}</i> ". |
| Tags | Tags classify your gateways to facilitate search, analysis, and management. If no tag is available, click View predefined tags to create one on the TMS console. |
| | NOTE If your organization has configured tag policies for APIG, add tags to gateways based on the policies. If a tag does not comply with the policies, gateway creation may fail. Contact your organization administrator to learn more about tag policies. |
| Description | Description about the gateway. |

Step 3 Click Next.

Step 4 Confirm the gateway configurations, read and confirm your acceptance of the service agreement, and click **Pay Now**. The instance is created with the status displayed on the screen.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After the gateway is created, you can create and manage APIs in this gateway. Go to the **Gateway Information** page. It shows the gateway details, network configurations, and configuration parameters.

You can modify the gateway name, description, scheduled maintenance time window, security group, and EIP.

Before deleting a gateway, ensure that the deletion will not impact your services.

6.2 Viewing or Modifying Gateway Information

You can view and modify the configuration of your gateways on the console.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Gateways**.
- **Step 3** Click **Access Console** or the name of the target gateway.
- **Step 4** On the **Gateway Information** tab, view or modify the configuration of the gateway.

Table 6-2 Gateway information

| Modifiable Parameter | Description | | |
|-------------------------|--|--|--|
| Basic Information | Basic information about the gateway, including the name, ID, edition, AZ, description, enterprise project, and maintenance time window. Modify the basic information as required. To copy the gateway ID, click next to the ID. | | |
| Billing | Billing mode of the gateway. | | |
| Network | VPC VPC associated with the gateway. Click the VPC name to view the configuration. Subnet Subnet associated with the gateway. Click the subnet name to view the configuration. Security Group Security group associated with the gateway. Click the security group name to view the configuration or click to bind a new one. | | |
| Inbound Access | VPC Access Address EIP To bind an EIP to the gateway, click Enable. To copy the bound EIP, click . Modify the bandwidth as required. The bandwidth is billed by hour based on the rate of the EIP service. To unbind the EIP from the gateway, click Unbind EIP. | | |

| Modifiable Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Outbound Access | Determine whether to allow backend services of the APIs created in the gateway to be deployed on public networks. You can enable or disable outbound access at any time. |
| | After enabling outbound access, you can click View Metrics to view the monitoring data, or modify the bandwidth as required. |
| Routes | Configure a private network segment that needs to communicate with the gateway. After a gateway is created, it can communicate with the VPC subnet specified during gateway creation by default. |
| | Configure routes at your premises if the subnet of your data center is within the following three segments: 10.0.0.0/8-24, 172.16.0.0/12-24, and 192.168.0.0/16-24. |

----End

6.3 Configuring Parameters

This section describes how to configure common parameters for a gateway to adjust component functions.

Constraint

Modifying gateway configuration parameters will interrupt services. Do this during off-peak hours or when no service is running.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Gateways**.
- **Step 3** Click **Access Console** or the name of the target gateway.
- **Step 4** Click the **Parameters** tab, and click **Modify** in the row that contains the target parameter. The configuration parameters vary depending on the gateway edition.

Table 6-3 Configuration parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|---|
| ratelimit_api_limits | Default request throttling value applied to all APIs. Default: 200 calls/second. The total number of times an API can be called is determined by this parameter only if no request throttling policy is bound to the API. The Max. API Requests of a request throttling policy cannot exceed the value of this parameter. |
| request_body_size | Maximum body size allowed for an API request. Default: 12 MB. |
| backend_timeout | Backend response timeout. Default: 60,000 ms. Range: 1–600,000 ms. |
| app_token | Determine whether to enable app_token authentication. Default: disabled. If you enable this function, an access_token can be added to the API request for authentication. |
| | app_token_expire_time: validity period of an access_token. A new access_token must be obtained before the original access_token expires. |
| | refresh_token_expire_time: the validity period of a refresh_token. A refresh_token is used to obtain a new access_token. |
| | app_token_uri: the URI used to obtain an access_token. |
| | app_token_key: the encryption key of an access token. |
| app_api_key | Determine whether to enable app_api_key authentication. Default: disabled. If you enable this function, the apikey parameter can be added to the API request to carry the key of a credential for authentication. |
| app_basic | Determine whether to enable app_basic authentication. Default: disabled. After this option is enabled, users can add the header parameter Authorization and set the parameter value to "Basic + base64 (appkey + : + appsecret)", in which appkey and appsecret are the key and secret of a credential. |
| app_secret | Determine whether to enable app_secret authentication. Default: disabled. If you enable this function, the X-HW-ID and X-HW-AppKey parameters can be added to the API request to carry the key and secret of a credential for authentication. |

| Parameter | Description | | | |
|-----------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| app_route | Determine whether to support IP address-based API access. Default: disabled. If you enable this function, APIs in any group except DEFAULT can be called using IP addresses. | | | |
| backend_client_certific ate | Determine whether to enable backend two-way authentication. Default: disabled. If you enable this function, you can configure two-way authentication for a backend when creating an API. | | | |
| ssl_ciphers | Supported HTTPS cipher suites. By default, all cipher suites are supported. Select cipher suites after you bind independent domain names to an API group. | | | |
| real_ip_from_xff | Determine whether to use the IP addresses in the X-Forwarded-For header for access control and request throttling. By default, the IP addresses in this header are not used. | | | |
| | xff_index: Sequence number of an IP address in the X-Forwarded-For header. The value can be positive, negative, or 0. | | | |
| | • If the value is 0 or positive, the IP address of the corresponding index in the X-Forwarded-For header will be obtained. | | | |
| | If the value is negative, the IP address of the indicated reverse sequence in the X-Forwarded-For header will be obtained. | | | |
| | For example, assume that the X-Forwarded-For header of a request received by API gateway contains three IP addresses: IP1, IP2, and IP3. If the value of xff_index is 0, IP1 is obtained. If the value is 1, IP2 is obtained. If the value is –1, IP3 is obtained. If the value is –2, IP2 is obtained. | | | |
| vpc_name_modifiable | Determine whether load balance channel names can be modified. By default, the names can be modified. NOTICE If this option is enabled, load balance channels of the current gateway cannot be managed using project-level load balance channel management APIs. | | | |
| app_jwt_enable | Determine whether to enable app_jwt authentication. Default: disabled. If you enable this function, the Authorization and Timestamp parameters can be added to API requests to carry the key, secret, and timestamp of a credential for authentication. | | | |
| | app_jwt_auth_header is a header included in API requests for app_jwt authentication. The default value of the header is Authorization. | | | |

| Parameter | Description | | |
|--------------------|--|--|--|
| public_key_enable | Determine whether to enable public_key authentication. Default: disabled. If you enable this option, signature keys of the public_key type can be used for authentication. | | |
| | <pre>public_key_uri_prefix indicates the prefix of the URI used to obtain the secret of public_key. The URI format is as follows: https://{VPC access address} {public_key_uri_prefix}{public_key name}.</pre> | | |
| custom_auth_header | Determine whether to support custom authentication headers. By default, custom authentication headers are not supported. If you enable this parameter, the initial values of app_auth_header and backend_sign_header are empty, same as when the parameter is disabled. | | |
| | If you set the Current Value of app_auth_header , the parameter with the same name as this value carries the app authentication information in the request header for APIs that use app authentication. If you set the Current Value of backend_sign_header , the parameter with the same name as this value carries the signature information in the backend request header for APIs bound with an HMAC or Basic Auth signature key policy. NOTICE | | |
| | Configuring this parameter will affect all APIs that use app authentication or are bound with an HMAC or Basic Auth signature key policy in the gateway. | | |
| gzip | Determine whether to compress responses using gzip to reduce public network traffic. By default, responses are not compressed. The configuration will take effect in 1 minute. | | |
| | After enabling this parameter, set the compression level parameter comp_level . The greater the value is, the better responses are compressed. Default: 6 . | | |
| | Use gzip to compress response body larger than 1 KB. | | |
| | gzip supports the following file types: text/xml, text/plain, text/css, application/javascript, application/rss+xml, text/javascript, image/tiff, image/svg+xml, application/json, and application/xml. | | |
| | After enabling gzip compression, you must add request header Accept-Encoding: gzip. | | |
| | The gzip configuration can be modified 1 minute after being completed. | | |

| Parameter | Description | | |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| custom_log | Whether to enable custom logs. Default: disabled. Once enabled, values of specified parameters will be printed in specified locations of calling logs for all APIs in the gateway. | | |
| | After this function is enabled, click Modify , and then click Add to add the parameters to print in calling logs. NOTICE | | |
| | Custom logs print only the requests initiated from clients and do not print the constants and system parameters defined in APIG. | | |
| | Custom logs can have a maximum of 10 fields, with a total size of not more than 2 KB. | | |
| | Some special characters in parameter values will be encoded. For example, the plus sign (+) will be encoded as a space, double quotation marks (") encoded as \x22, and a backslash (\) encoded as \x5C. | | |
| sse_strategy | Whether to enable Server-Sent Events (SSE) transmission. It is disabled by default. Once enabled, the responses of APIs are output in streaming mode for character-based rendering. NOTICE The sse_strategy configuration can be modified 1 minute after | | |
| | being completed. | | |
| request_custom_confi g | Configure client request parameters. HTTP/2: Enabled by default. For details, see HTTP 2.0. | | |
| | request_body_timeout: Timeout for client request body. Default: 8s. Modify this parameter if the network condition is poor or the request body is too large. NOTICE | | |
| | The client request configuration can be modified 1 minute after being completed. | | |
| api_uri_no_escape | Determine whether to escape the path in the API URL. It is disabled by default, indicating that the path in the URL is escaped. | | |
| | For details about the function of not escaping paths after api_uri_no_escape is enabled, see Table 6-4. | | |

Table 6-4 Functions affected if path is not escaped

| Functio n API definitio | Path for APIG to match routes. | API Fronten d Definiti on Path /{path} | Path for Sending a Request /aa %2Faa | Disabling api_uri_no_ escape /aa/aa | Enabling api_uri_no _escape /aa%2Faa |
|---|---|--|---|--|---|
| Paramet er orchestr ation | Path used by backend service parameters. | - | - - | /aa/aa | /aa%2Faa |
| HTTP- to- HTTPS redirecti on | Path used for redirection. | - | - | /aa/aa | /aa%2Faa |
| Backend policies | The policy condition is the path of the request input parameter. | - | - | /aa/aa | /aa%2Faa |
| Third- party authenti cation policy | Path transferred to the third-party system after the API is bound to a third-party authentication policy. | - | - | /aa/aa | /aa%2Faa |
| Kafka log push policy | Request path used after the Kafka log push policy is bound to the API. | - | - | /aa/aa | /aa%2Faa |
| Load balance channel s | Path used by APIG to forward requests when the load balance channel uses the URI hash. | - | - | /aa/aa | /aa%2Faa |

| Functio n | Description | API Fronten d Definiti on Path | Path for Sending a Request | Disabling api_uri_no_ escape | Enabling api_uri_no _escape |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Function Graph backend s | Request path sent to a function when the backend type of the API is FunctionGraph. | - | - | /aa/aa | /aa%2Faa |
| Custom authenti cation | Path of the request sent to the function when the API authentication mode is set to Custom . | - | - | /aa/aa | /aa%2Faa |

----End

6.4 Tag Management

Tags classify your gateways to facilitate search, analysis, and management.

Procedure

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Gateways**.
- **Step 3** Click **Access Console** or the name of the target gateway.
- **Step 4** On the **Tags** tab, click **Add Tag**.

A tag consists of a key and value. The value can be empty.

If your organization has configured tag policies for APIG, add tags to gateways based on the policies. If a tag does not comply with the policies, tag addition may fail. Contact your organization administrator to learn more about tag policies.

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

6.5 Managing VPC Endpoints

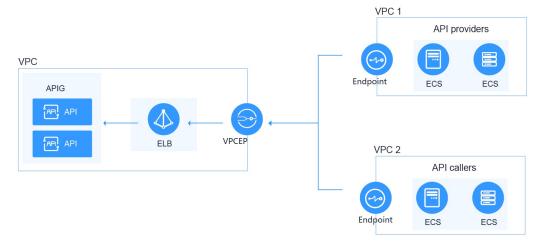
VPC endpoints are secure and private channels for connecting VPCs to VPC endpoint services.

APIs can be exposed and accessed across VPCs in the same region of the same cloud.

NOTICE

Currently, regions except **LA-Mexico City1** and **CN North-Beijing1** support the VPC endpoint management.

Figure 6-1 Cross-VPC access in the same region



Procedure

- **Step 1** Go to the **APIG console**.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Gateways**.
- **Step 3** Click **Access Console** or the name of the target gateway.
- **Step 4** Click **VPC Endpoints** to view details. For details, see **VPC Endpoints**.

Table 6-5 VPC endpoint information

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| VPC Endpoint Service | Name of the VPC endpoint service created when you buy the gateway. The gateway can be accessed using the endpoint service. |

| Parameter | Description | | | |
|-------------|---|--|--|--|
| Connections | VPC endpoints connected to the gateway. If you need a new VPC endpoint, click Create VPC Endpoint . | | | |
| | VPC Endpoint ID: ID of a VPC endpoint. | | | |
| | Packet ID: identifier of the VPC endpoint ID. | | | |
| | Status: status of the VPC endpoint. For details about VPC endpoint statuses, see What Are Statuses of VPC Endpoint Services and VPC Endpoints? | | | |
| | Owner: account ID of the VPC endpoint creator. | | | |
| | Created: time when the VPC endpoint is created. | | | |
| | Operation: whether to allow the VPC endpoint to connect to the VPC endpoint service. Accept or reject connection from the VPC endpoint to the VPC endpoint service. | | | |
| | NOTICE Once you reject the connection, services that run using the connection may be affected. Exercise caution. | | | |
| Permissions | Specify accounts allowed to access using the VPC endpoints by adding the account IDs to the whitelist. | | | |
| | Click Add Account and enter an account ID. | | | |
| | Account ID: ID of an account allowed to access using the VPC endpoints. | | | |
| | Created: time when the whitelist is created. | | | |
| | Operation: Manage access of the account from VPC endpoints. To forbid access of the account, remove it from the whitelist. | | | |

----End

6.6 Modifying Specifications

If the specifications of a gateway cannot meet your service requirements, upgrade the specifications.

NOTICE

- Currently, the specifications of ELB-based gateways can be modified in regions except LA-Mexico City1 and CN North-Beijing1. During the specification change, the persistent connection is intermittently disconnected and needs to be re-established. You are advised to change the specification during off-peak hours.
- Specifications can be upgraded but cannot be downgraded.
- Changing the gateway edition will also change the private network access IP addresses. Modify your firewall or whitelist configuration if necessary for service continuity. Do not perform any other operations on the gateway.

Procedure

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Gateways**.
- **Step 3** Choose **More** > **Modify Specifications** on the right of the target gateway.
- **Step 4** Select an edition and click **Next**. For details about the gateway parameters, see **Table 6-3**.
- **Step 5** Confirm the configuration, read and confirm your acceptance of the service agreement, and click **Pay Now**. The upgrade takes 15 to 30 minutes to complete.

NOTE

• For pay-per-use gateways, pay for what you use without needing to pay for any extra fees.

----End

7 SDKs

APIG supports API authentication based on IAM, apps, and custom authorizers. You can also choose not to authenticate API requests. For details about the differences between the four modes and how to select one, see **Calling APIs**. This section describes how to download SDKs and view related instructions.

Scenario

SDKs are used when you call APIs through app authentication. Download SDKs and related documentation and then call APIs by following the instructions in the documentation.

Procedure

- Step 1 Go to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **Help Center**.
- Step 3 Click Using SDKs.
- **Step 4** Click **Download SDK** next to the desired language. An SDK contains SDK code and sample code. SDKs vary depending on the language.

To view the support guide, click **SDK Documentation**.

----End

8 Published API Calling

8.1 Calling APIs

You can call APIs opened by others in APIG.

Usage Guidelines

- An API can be accessed 1000 times by using the debugging domain name allocated when the API's group is created.
- If the CA parameter is displayed in the Create SSL Certificate dialog box on the API Management > API Policies > SSL Certificates page of the APIG console, pay attention to the following restrictions when calling APIs:
 - When calling an API with HTTP/1.0, do not use **Transfer-Encoding** in the request header.
 - Do not use the CONNECT method.
 - Do not use both Content-Length and Transfer-Encoding in the request header.
 - Do not use spaces or control characters in the request line.
 - Do not use spaces or control characters in the header name.
 - Do not use spaces or control characters in the Host request header.
 - Dot not use multiple Host parameters in the request header.

Prerequisites

Before calling an API, ensure that the network of your service system can communicate with the API access domain name or address.

- If the service system and gateway are in the same VPC, the API can be directly accessed.
- If the service system and gateway are in different VPCs of a region, connect them using a peering connection. For details, see VPC Peering Connection.
- If the service system and gateway are in different VPCs of different regions, create a cloud connection and load the two VPCs to connect them. For details, see Connecting VPCs in Different Regions.

• If the service system and gateway are connected over the public network, ensure that the gateway has been bound with an EIP.

Obtaining API Calling Information

Obtain API calling information from the API provider before you call an API.

Obtain API request information

On the APIG console, choose **API Management** > **APIs**. On the **APIs** page, obtain the domain name, request method, and request path of the desired API. Click the API name to go to the **APIs** tab page, and obtain the basic information in the **Frontend Configuration** and **Backend Configuration** areas.

• Obtain API authentication information

Obtain the request authentication information according to the API's authentication mode.

| Authentication Mode | Authentication Information |
|-----------------------------|---|
| App (signature) | Obtain the key and secret of a credential authorized for the API from the API provider, as well as the signing SDK. |
| App (simple authentication) | Obtain the AppCode of a credential authorized for the API from the API provider. |
| App (two-factor) | Obtain the information required for both app and custom authentication. |
| App (app_api_key) | Obtain the key and secret of a credential authorized for the API from the API provider. |
| App (app_secret) | Obtain the key and secret of a credential authorized for the API from the API provider. |
| App (app_basic) | Obtain the key and secret of a credential authorized for the API from the API provider. |
| App (app_jwt) | Obtain the key and secret of a credential authorized for the API from the API provider. |
| IAM (token) | Obtain the username and password for the cloud platform. |
| IAM (AK/SK) | Obtain the AK/SK of an account for the cloud platform and the signing SDK. |
| IAM (two- factor) | Obtain the information required for both IAM and custom authentication |
| Custom | Obtain the custom authentication information to carry in request parameters from the API provider. |
| None | No authentication information required. |

| Authentication Mode | Authentication Information | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| Third-party authorizer (API policy) | Obtain third-party authorizer information to carry in request parameters from the API provider. | | |

Credential key and secret

On the APIG console, choose **API Management** > **Credentials**. Click the name of a credential authorized for the target API, and obtain the key and secret on the credential details page.

Signing SDK

On the APIG console, choose **Help Center** > **Using SDKs**, and download the SDK of the desired language.

AppCode

On the APIG console, choose **API Management** > **Credentials**. Click the name of a credential authorized for the target API, and obtain an AppCode in the **AppCodes** area of the credential details page.

Calling an API

■ NOTE

This section describes only the configuration of the request path and authentication parameters. For other parameters, such as timeout and SSL, configure them as required. To avoid service loss due to incorrect parameters, configure them by referring to the industry standards.

1. Construct an API request. Example:

```
POST https://{Address}/{Path}?{Query} {Header} {
    {Body}
}
```

- POST: request method. Replace it with the request method obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information.
- {Address}: request address. Replace it with the domain name obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information. You can also access the API using an IP address.

| Scenario | Request Parameter Configuration | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Calling an API with a domain name | Call an API using the debugging domain name allocated to the API group or a domain name bound to the group. No additional configuration is required. | | | |
| Calling an API in the DEFAULT group with an IP address | Call an API in the DEFAULT group with an IP address. No additional configuration is required. | | | |

| Scenario | Request Parameter Configuration | | | |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Calling an API in a custom group with an IP address | To use an IP address to call an API that uses app authentication in a non-DEFAULT group, Set configuration parameters app_route and app_secret of the gateway to On. After app_route is enabled, a credential cannot be authorized to APIs that use the same request path and method. | | | |
| | Add header parameters X-HW-ID and X- HW-APPKEY and set them to the key and secret of a credential authorized for the API. | | | |
| | To use an IP address to call an API that does not use app authentication in a non-DEFAULT group, add the header parameter host. | | | |

- {Path}: request path. Replace it with the request path obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information.
- {Query}: (optional) query string in format
 "Parameter_name=Parameter_value", for example, limit=10. Separate multiple query strings with ampersands (&). For details, see the request parameters obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information.
- {Header}: request header parameter in format
 "Parameter_name.Parameter_value", for example, Content Type:application/json. For details, see the request parameters obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information.
- {Body}: request body in JSON format. For details, see the request body description obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information.
- 2. Add authentication information to the API request.

| Authentication Mode | Request Parameter Configuration | | |
|-----------------------------|---|--|--|
| App (signature) | Use the obtained SDK to sign the API request. For details, see Calling APIs Through App Authentication. | | |
| App (simple authentication) | Add the header parameter X-Apig-AppCode and set the parameter value to the AppCode obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information . For details, see Getting Started . | | |
| App (app_api_key) | To enable app_api_key authentication, ensure that the app_api_key parameter has been set to on on the Parameters tab of the gateway. Add the header or query string apikey and set | | |
| | the parameter value to the key obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information. | | |

| Authentication Mode | Request Parameter Configuration | | |
|------------------------|--|--|--|
| App (app_secret) | Set the app_secret parameter to on on the Parameters tab of a gateway to enable app_secret authentication, and set app_api_key to off to disable app_api_key authentication. Add the header parameter X-HW-ID and set the parameter value to the key obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information. Add the header parameter X-HW-AppKey and set the parameter value to the secret obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information. | | |
| App (app_basic) | To enable app_basic authentication, ensure that the app_basic parameter has been set to on on the Parameters tab of the gateway. Add the header parameter Authorization to the API request. The value is "Basic "+base64(appkey+":"+appsecret). appkey and appsecret are the key and secret obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information. | | |
| App (app_jwt) | To enable app_jwt authentication, ensure that the app_jwt parameter has been set to on on the Parameters tab of the gateway. Add the header parameter Timestamp and set the parameter value to the Unix timestamp of the current time in millisecond. Add the header parameter Authorization and set the parameter value to "SHA-256 (appkey + appsecret + timestamp)", in which appkey and appsecret are the key and secret obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information and timestamp is the Unix timestamp of the current time in millisecond. The character string encrypted using SHA-256 must be lowercase letters. Add the header parameter X-HW-ID and set the parameter value to the key obtained in Obtaining API Calling Information. | | |
| App (two-factor) | Add the information required for both app and custom authentication to the API request. | | |
| IAM (token) | Obtain a token from the cloud platform and add the header parameter X-Auth-Token with the token as the value. For details, see Token Authentication . | | |
| IAM (AK/SK) | Use the obtained SDK to sign the API request. For details, see AK/SK Authentication . | | |

| Authentication Mode | Request Parameter Configuration | | |
|---|---|--|--|
| IAM (two-factor) | Add the information for both IAM and custom authentication to the API request. | | |
| Custom | Add the information required for custom authentication to the API request. | | |
| None | No authentication information required. | | |
| Third-party authorizer (API policy) | Obtain third-party authorizer information to carry in request parameters from the API provider. | | |

8.2 Response Headers

The following table describes the response headers that APIG adds to the response returned when an API is called.

X-Apig-Mode: debug indicates API debugging information.

| Response Header | Description | Remarks | |
|---------------------------------|--|---|--|
| X-Request-Id | Request ID. | Returned for all valid requests. | |
| X-Apig- Latency | Duration from the time when APIG receives a request to the time when the backend returns a message header. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug . | |
| X-Apig- Upstream- Latency | Duration from the time when APIG sends a request to the backend to the time when the backend returns a message header. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and the backend type is not Mock. | |
| X-Apig- RateLimit-api | API request limit information. Example: remain:9,limit:10,time:10 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and a limit has been configured for the number of times the API can be called. | |
| X-Apig- RateLimit- user | User request limit information. Example: remain:9,limit:10,time:10 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and a limit has been configured for the number of times the API can be called by a user. | |

| Response Header | Description | Remarks | |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|--|
| X-Apig- RateLimit-app | Credential request limit information. Example: remain:9,limit:10,time:10 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and a limit has been configured for the number of times the API can be called by a credential. | |
| X-Apig- RateLimit-ip | IP address request limit information. Example: remain:9,limit:10,time:10 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and a limit has been configured for the number of times the API can be called by an IP address. | |
| X-Apig- RateLimit-api- allenv | Default API request limit information. Example: remain:199,limit:200,tim e:1 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug . | |
| X-Apig-count | Total number of times that a request is forwarded by APIG. | Returned for all valid requests forwarded by APIG. If the value of X-Apig-count is greater than 10, error APIG.0612 is reported. | |

8.3 Error Codes

The following table lists the error codes that you may encounter when calling APIs. If an error code starting with **APIGW** is returned after you call an API, rectify the fault by referring to the instructions provided in **Error Codes**.

□ NOTE

- For details about the error codes that may occur when you manage APIs, see Error Codes.
- If an error occurs when you use APIG, find the error message and description in the following table according to the error code, for example, APIG.0101. The error messages are subject to change without prior notice.

Table 8-1 Error codes

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|--|---|
| APIG.01 01 | The API does not exist or has not been published in the environment. | 404 | The API does not exist or has not been published in the environment. | Check whether the domain name, method, and path are consistent with those of the created API. Check whether the API has been published. If it has been published in a non-production environment, check whether the X-Stage header in the request is the environment name. Check whether the domain name used to call the API has been bound to the group to which the API belongs. |
| APIG.01 01 | The API does not exist. | 404 | The API request method does not exist. | Check whether the API request method is the same as the method defined by the API. |
| APIG.01 03 | The backend does not exist. | 500 | The backend service was not found. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.01 04 | The plug-ins do not exist. | 500 | No plug-in configurations were found. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.01 05 | The backend configurations do not exist. | 500 | No backend configurations were found. | Contact technical support. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|---|----------------------------|---|---|
| APIG.01 06 | Orchestration error. | 400 | An orchestration error occurred. | Check whether the frontend and backend parameters of the API are correct. |
| APIG.01 07 | The custom lua script encountered an unexpected error | 500 | An unknown error occurred in the Lua script. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.02 01 | API request error. | 400 | Invalid request parameters. | Set valid request parameters. |
| APIG.02 01 | Request entity too large. | 413 | The request body exceeds 12 MB. | Reduce the size of the request body. |
| APIG.02 01 | Request URI too large. | 414 | The request URI exceeds 32 KB. | Reduce the size of the request URI. |
| APIG.02 01 | Request headers too large. | 494 | The request headers are too large because one of them exceeds 32 KB or the total length exceeds 128 KB. | Reduce the size of the request headers. |
| APIG.02 01 | Backend unavailable. | 502 | The backend service is unavailable. | Check whether the backend address configured for the API is accessible. |
| APIG.02 01 | Backend timeout. | 504 | The backend service has timed out. | Increase the timeout duration of the backend service or shorten the processing time. |
| APIG.02 01 | An unexpected error occurred | 500 | An internal error occurred. | Contact technical support. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|---|----------------------------|--|--|
| APIG.02 02 | Backend unavailable | 502 | The backend is unavailable. | Check whether the backend request protocol configured for the API is the same as the request protocol used by the backend service. |
| APIG.02 03 | Backend timeout | 504 | The backend service has timed out. | Increase the timeout duration of the backend service or shorten the processing time. |
| APIG.02 04 | SSL protocol is not supported: TLSv1.1 | 400 | The SSL protocol version is not supported. | Use a supported SSL protocol version. |
| APIG.02 05 | Verify client certificate failed | 400 | Failed to verify the client certificate. | Check whether the client certificate is correct. |
| APIG.03 01 | Incorrect IAM authentication information. | 401 | The IAM authentication details are incorrect. | Check whether the token is correct. |
| APIG.03 02 | The IAM user is not authorized to access the API. | 403 | The IAM user is not allowed to access the API. | Check whether the user is controlled by a blacklist or whitelist. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|---|---|
| APIG.03 03 | Incorrect app authentication information. | 401 | The app authentication details are incorrect. | Check whether the request method, path, query strings, and request body are consistent with those used for signing; check whether the date and time on the client are correct; and check whether the signing code is correct by referring to Calling APIs Through App Authentication. |
| APIG.03 04 | The app is not authorized to access the API. | 403 | The app is not allowed to access the API. | Check whether the app has been authorized to access the API. |
| APIG.03 05 | Incorrect authentication information. | 401 | The authentication information is incorrect. | Check whether the authentication information is correct. |
| APIG.03 06 | API access denied. | 403 | Access to the API is not allowed. | Check whether you have been authorized to access the API. |
| APIG.03 07 | The token must be updated. | 401 | The token needs to be updated. | Obtain a new token from IAM. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|--|---|
| APIG.03 08 | The throttling threshold has been reached. | 429 | The throttling threshold has been reached. | Try again after the throttling resumes. If the number of debugging domain requests per day is reached, bind an independent domain name to the service to which the API belongs. |
| APIG.03 10 | The project is unavailable. | 403 | The project is currently unavailable. | Select another project and try again. |
| APIG.03 11 | Incorrect debugging authentication information. | 401 | The debugging authentication details are incorrect. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.03 12 | Incorrect third-party authentication information,auth fail | 401 | The authentication failed because the third-party authentication information is incorrect. | Check whether the identity information is correct. |
| APIG.03 13 | Incorrect third-party authentication information,identities error | 401 | The identity included in the third-party authentication information is incorrect. | Check whether the identity information is consistent with the identity source in the third-party authentication plug-in. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|---|----------------------------|--|--|
| APIG.03 14 | Incorrect third-party authentication information,access deny | 403 | Access denied because the third-party authentication information is incorrect. | Contact technical support to check whether the request is a service request. If yes, increase the brute force threshold of the third-party authentication plug-in. |
| APIG.04 01 | Unknown client IP address. | 403 | The client IP address cannot be identified. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.04 02 | The IP address is not authorized to access the API. | 403 | The IP address is not allowed to access the API. | Check whether the IP address is controlled by a blacklist or whitelist. |
| APIG.04 04 | Access to the backend IP address has been denied. | 403 | The backend IP address cannot be accessed. | Check whether the backend IP address or the IP address corresponding to the backend domain name is accessible. |
| APIG.04 05 | The app is not accessed from a trusted IP address. | 403 | The application is not accessed from a trusted IP address. | Check whether the source IP address is allowed or denied in the access control policy. |
| APIG.05 01 | The app quota has been used up. | 405 | The app quota has been reached. | Increase the app quota. |
| APIG.05 02 | The app has been frozen. | 405 | The app has been frozen. | Check whether your account balance is sufficient. |
| APIG.06 01 | Internal server error. | 500 | An internal error occurred. | Contact technical support. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|---|---|
| APIG.06 02 | Bad request. | 400 | Invalid request. | Check whether the request is valid. |
| APIG.06 05 | Domain name resolution failed. | 500 | Domain name resolution failed. | Check whether the domain name is correct and has been bound to a correct backend address. |
| APIG.06 06 | Failed to load the API configurations. | 500 | API configurations could not be loaded. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 07 | The following protocol is supported: {xxx} | 400 | The protocol is not supported. Only xxx is supported. xxx is subject to the actual value in the | Use HTTP or HTTPS to access the API. |
| APIG.06 08 | Failed to obtain the admin token. | 500 | The administrator account details cannot be obtained. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 09 | The VPC backend does not exist. | 500 | The workload backend service cannot be found. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 10 | No backend available. | 502 | No backend services are available. | Check whether all backend services are available. For example, check whether the API calling information is consistent with the actual configuration. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|---|----------------------------|--|---|
| APIG.06 11 | The backend port does not exist. | 500 | The backend port was not found. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 12 | An API cannot call itself. | 500 | An API cannot call itself. | Modify the backend configurations, and ensure that the number of layers the API is recursively called does not exceed 10. |
| APIG.06 13 | The IAM service is currently unavailable. | 503 | IAM is currently unavailable. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 15 | Incorrect third-party authentication VPC information | 500 | Failed to obtain the load balance channel nodes for third-party authentication. | Check whether the load balance channel for third-party authentication is correctly configured. |
| APIG.06 16 | Incorrect third-party authentication request information | 500 | Failed to connect to the third-party authentication service. | Check whether the third-party authentication service is normal. |
| APIG.06 17 | Incorrect third-party authentication response information | 500 | Failed to obtain response from the third-party authentication service. | Check whether the third-party authentication service is normal. |
| APIG.07 05 | Backend signature calculation failed. | 500 | Backend signature calculation failed. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.08 02 | The IAM user is forbidden in the currently selected region | 403 | The IAM user is disabled in the current region. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.21 02 | PublicKey is null | 400 | The signature key is not found. | Contact technical support. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|---|----------------------------|---|---|
| APIG.22 01 | Appkey or SecretKey is invalid | 400 | Invalid AppKey or SecretKey. | Check whether the AppKey and SecretKey in the request are correct. |
| APIG.22 02 | Refresh token is invalid | 400 | Invalid refresh token. | Check whether the refresh token is correct. |
| APIG.22 03 | Access token is invalid | 400 | Invalid access token. | Check whether the access token is correct. |
| APIG.22 04 | ContentType invalid | 400 | Invalid ContentType. | Check whether the ContentType is correct. |
| APIG.22 05 | Auth parameter invalid | 400 | Invalid authentication parameter. | Check whether the authentication parameters are correct. |
| APIG.22 06 | Auth method invalid | 400 | Invalid authentication mode. | Check whether the authentication mode is correct. |
| APIG.22 08 | The length of through_data is out of range | 400 | The length of through_data is out of range. | The maximum length of through_data is 300. Adjust through_data based on the actual situation. |
| APIG.22 09 | The value of grant_type is not in enum List | 400 | The value of grant_type is invalid. | The value of grant_type can only be client_credentials or refresh_token. Change it based on the actual situation. |
| APIG.22 10 | Lack of grant_type | 400 | The authorization type is missing. | Add grant_type. |
| APIG.22 11 | Lack of client_id | 400 | The client ID is missing. | Add a client ID. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--------------------------------|----------------------------|---|---|
| APIG.22 12 | Lack of client_secret | 400 | The client secret is missing. | Add a client secret. |
| APIG.22 13 | Lack of refresh_token | 400 | The refresh token is missing. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.10 01 | Refresh token is expired | 401 | The refresh token has expired. | Obtain another refresh token. |
| APIG.10 02 | Access token is expired | 401 | The access token has expired. | Obtain another access token. |
| APIG.10 03 | App not match refresh token | 401 | The app does not match the refresh token. | Check whether the client_id is correct. |
| APIG.10 04 | App not exist | 401 | The app does not exist. | Check whether the access token is correct. |
| APIG.10 09 | AppKey or AppSecret is invalid | 400 | The AppKey or AppSecret is invalid. | Check whether the AppKey or AppSecret in the request is correct. |

9 Permissions Management

9.1 Creating a User and Granting APIG Permissions

This topic describes how to use **Identity and Access Management (IAM)** to implement fine-grained permissions control for your APIG resources. With IAM, you can:

- Create IAM users for employees based on your enterprise's organizational structure. Each IAM user will have their own security credentials for accessing APIG resources.
- Grant only the permissions required for users to perform a specific task.
- Entrust another account or cloud service to perform O&M on your APIG resources.

If your Huawei Cloud account does not require individual IAM users, skip this chapter.

This section describes the procedure for granting permissions (see Figure 9-1).

Prerequisites

Learn about the permissions (see **Table 9-1**) supported by APIG and choose policies or roles according to your requirements. For the permissions of other services, see **System Permissions**.

| Role/ Policy Name | Description | Туре | Dependency |
|----------------------------|--|------------------------------|--|
| APIG Administra tor | Administrator permissions for APIG. Users granted these permissions can use all functions of API gateways. | System- defined role | If a user needs to create, delete, or change resources of other services, the user must also be granted administrator permissions of the corresponding services in the same project. |
| APIG FullAccess | Full permissions for APIG. Users granted these permissions can use all functions of gateways. | System- defined policy | None |
| APIG ReadOnly Access | Read-only permissions for APIG. Users granted these permissions can only view gateways. | System- defined policy | None |

Table 9-1 System-defined roles and policies supported by APIG

Process Flow

Create user group and assign permissions

Create user

Log in as the user and verify permissions

End

Figure 9-1 Process for granting APIG permissions

1. Create a user group and assign permissions.

Create a user group on the IAM console, and attach the **APIG Administrator** role or the **APIG FullAccess** policy to the group.

2. Create an IAM user.

Create a user on the IAM console and add the user to the group created in 1.

3. **Log in** and verify permissions.

Log in to the APIG console as the created user, and verify that the user has administrator permissions for APIG.

9.2 APIG Custom Policies

Custom policies can be created to supplement the system-defined policies of APIG. For the actions that can be added to custom policies, see **Permissions Policies** and **Supported Actions**.

You can create custom policies using one of the following methods:

- Visual editor: Select cloud services, actions, resources, and request conditions.
 This does not require knowledge of policy syntax.
- JSON: Edit JSON policies from scratch or based on an existing policy.

For operation details, see **Creating a Custom Policy**. The following section contains examples of common APIG custom policies.

Example Custom Policies

Example 1: Allow users to create and debug APIs

• Example 2: Deny API group creation

A policy with only "Deny" permissions must be used in conjunction with other policies to take effect. If the permissions assigned to a user contain both "Allow" and "Deny", the "Deny" permissions take precedence over the "Allow" permissions.

The following method can be used if you need to assign permissions of the **APIG FullAccess** policy to a user but you want to prevent the user from creating API groups. Create a custom policy for denying API group creation, and attach both policies to the group to which the user belongs. Then, the user can perform all operations on API gateways except creating API groups. The following is an example of a deny policy:

```
{
    "Version": "1.1",
    "Statement": [
    {
```

10 Auditing

10.1 APIG Operations Recorded by CTS

Enabling CTS

If you want to collect, record, or query operation logs for APIG in common scenarios such as security analysis, audit, and problem locating, **enable Cloud Trace Service (CTS)**.

CTS provides the following functions:

- Recording audit logs
- Querying audit logs
- Dumping audit logs
- Encrypting trace files
- Enabling notifications of key operations

Viewing Key Operations

With CTS, you can record operations associated with APIG for future query, audit, and backtracking.

Table 10-1 APIG operations recorded by CTS

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|-----------------------------|---------------|-------------------|
| Creating an API group | ApiGroup | createApiGroup |
| Modifying an API Group | ApiGroup | updateApiGroup |
| Deleting an API group | ApiGroup | deleteApiGroup |
| Verifying an API group name | Swagger | CheckApiGroups |
| Creating an environment | Environment | createEnvironment |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|---|------------------|--|
| Modifying an environment | Environment | updateEnvironment |
| Deleting an environment | Environment | deleteEnvironment |
| Creating a variable | EnvVariable | CreateEnvironmentVaria- ble |
| Deleting a variable | EnvVariable | DeleteEnvironmentVaria- ble |
| Modifying a variable | EnvVariable | UpdateEnvironmentVari- able |
| Creating a request throttling policy | Throttle | CreateRequestThrottling- Policy |
| Modifying a request throttling policy | Throttle | UpdateRequestThrot- tlingPolicy |
| Deleting a request throttling policy | Throttle | DeleteRequestThrottling- Policy |
| Creating an API | Api | CreateApi |
| Modifying an API | Api | UpdateApi |
| Deleting an API | Api | DeleteApi |
| Publishing an API or taking an API offline | Api | CreateOrDeletePubli- shRecordForApi |
| Verifying the API definition | Api | CheckApis |
| Debugging an API | Api | DebugApi |
| Publishing multiple APIs or taking APIs offline | Api | BatchPublishOrOfflineA- pi |
| Switching API versions | Api | ChangeApiVersion |
| Taking an API version offline | Api | DeleteApiByVersionId |
| Creating a signature key | Signature | CreateSignatureKey |
| Modifying a signature key | Signature | UpdateSignatureKey |
| Deleting a signature key | Signature | DeleteSignatureKey |
| Binding a signature key | SignatureBinding | AssociateSignatureKey |
| Unbinding a signature key | SignatureBinding | DisassociateSignatureKey |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|---|----------------------|---|
| Binding a request throttling policy | ThrottleBinding | AssociateRequestThrot- tlingPolicy |
| Unbinding a request throttling policy | ThrottleBinding | DisassociateRequest- ThrottlingPolicy |
| Unbinding multiple request throttling policies | ThrottleBinding | BatchDisassociateThrot- tlingPolicy |
| Creating a special request throttling configuration | ThrottleSpecial | CreateSpecialThrottling- Configuration |
| Modifying a special request throttling configuration | ThrottleSpecial | UpdateSpecialThrottling- Configuration |
| Deleting an excluded request throttling configuration | ThrottleSpecial | DeleteSpecialThrottling- Configuration |
| Authorizing apps | AppAuth | CreateAuthorizingApps |
| Canceling authorization | AppAuth | CancelingAuthorization |
| Binding a domain name | ApiGroup | AssociateDomain |
| Adding a certificate to a domain name | ApiGroup | AssociateCertificate |
| Modifying a domain name | ApiGroup | UpdateDomain |
| Unbinding a domain name | ApiGroup | DisassociateDomain |
| Deleting a domain certificate | ApiGroup | DisassociateCertificate |
| Creating an access control policy | Acl | CreateAclStrategy |
| Modifying an access control policy | Acl | UpdateAclStrategy |
| Deleting an access control policy | Acl | DeleteAcl |
| Deleting multiple access control policies | Acl BatchDeleteAclV2 | |
| Binding an access control policy to an API | AclBinding | CreateApiAclBinding |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|--|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| Unbinding an access control policy from an API | AclBinding | DeleteApiAclBinding |
| Unbinding multiple access control policies from APIs | AclBinding | BatchDeleteApiAclBind- ing |
| Creating a custom authorizer | Authorizer | CreateCustomAuthorizer |
| Modifying a custom authorizer | Authorizer | UpdateCustomAuthorizer |
| Deleting a custom authorizer | Authorizer | DeleteCustomAuthorizer |
| Exporting APIs | Swagger | ExportApiDefinitions |
| Importing APIs | Swagger | ImportApiDefinitions |
| Creating a VPC channel | Vpc | CreateVpcChannel |
| Updating a VPC channel | Vpc | UpdateVpcChannel |
| Deleting a VPC channel | Vpc | DeleteVpcChannel |
| Adding or updating backend instances | Vpc | AddingBackendInstances |
| Updating backend instances | Vpc | UpdateBackendInstances |
| Removing a backend server | Vpc | DeleteBackendInstance |
| Enabling backend servers | Vpc | BatchEnableMembers |
| Disabling backend servers | Vpc | BatchDisableMembers |
| Modifying VPC channel health check | Vpc UpdateHealthCh | |
| Adding or updating a backend server group of a VPC channel | Vpc | CreateMemberGroup |
| Deleting a backend server group of a VPC channel | Vpc DeleteMemberGr | |
| Updating a Backend Server Group of a VPC Channel | Vpc | UpdateMemberGroup |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|---|---------------|--------------------------------|
| Creating a response for an API group | ApiGroup | CreateGatewayResponse |
| Modifying a response of an API group | ApiGroup | UpdateGatewayResponse |
| Deleting a response of an API group | ApiGroup | DeleteGatewayResponse |
| Modifying the response of an error type defined for an API group | ApiGroup | UpdateGatewayRespon- seType |
| Deleting the response of an error type defined for an API group | ApiGroup | DeleteGatewayResponse- Type |
| Configuring a feature for a gateway | Feature | CreateFeatureV2 |
| Creating a dedicated gateway (Pay-per-use) | Instance | CreateInstance |
| Updating a dedicated gateway | Instance | UpdateInstance |
| Binding an EIP to a gateway or updating the EIP of a gateway | Instance | AddEip |
| Unbinding the EIP of a gateway | Instance | RemoveEip |
| Enabling public outbound access for a gateway | Instance | AddEngressEip |
| Updating the public outbound access bandwidth of a gateway | Instance | UpdateEngressEip |
| Disabling public outbound access for a gateway | Instance | RemoveEngressEip |
| Enabling public inbound access | Instance | AddIngressEip |
| Updating the public inbound access bandwidth of a gateway | Instance | UpdateIngressEip |
| Disabling public inbound access for a gateway | Instance | RemoveIngressEip |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name | |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| Deleting a dedicated gateway | Instance | DeleteInstances | |
| Modifying the specifications of a pay-per-use gateway | Instance | CreatePostPayResizeOr- der | |
| Accepting or rejecting a VPC endpoint connection | vpc-endpoint | AcceptOrRejectEndpoint- Connections | |
| Adding whitelist records for a VPC endpoint service | vpc-endpoint | AddEndpointPermissions | |
| Deleting whitelist records of a VPC endpoint service | vpc-endpoint | DeleteEndpointPermis- sions | |
| Batch adding or deleting gateway tags | Instance | BatchCreateOrDeleteIn- stanceTags | |
| Importing a microservice | Microservice | ImportMicroservice | |
| Adding an SSL certificate | SslCertificate | CreateCertificate | |
| Binding a domain name with SSL certificates | ApiGroup | BatchAssociateCerts | |
| Unbinding the SSL certificates of a domain name | ApiGroup | BatchDisassociateCerts | |
| Deleting an SSL certificate | SslCertificate | DeleteCertificate | |
| Modifying an SSL certificate | SslCertificate | UpdateCertificate | |
| Binding an SSL certificate to a domain name | Certificate | BatchAssociateDomains | |
| Unbinding an SSL certificate from a domain name | Certificate BatchDisassocia mains | | |
| Creating a plug-in | Plugin | CreatePlugin | |
| Modifying a plug-in | Plugin | UpdatePlugin | |
| Deleting a plug-in | Plugin | DeletePlugin | |
| Binding a plug-in to an API | Plugin AttachApiToPlug | | |
| Binding a plug-in to an API | Plugin | AttachPluginToApi | |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|--|--|----------------------------------|
| Unbinding an API from a plug-in | Plugin | DetachApiFromPlugin |
| Unbinding a plug-in from an API | Plugin | DetachPluginFromApi |
| Creating an app | Арр | CreateAnApp |
| Modifying an app | Арр | UpdateApp |
| Deleting an app | Арр | DeleteAppV2 |
| Resetting an Appsecret | Арр | ResettingAppSecret |
| Verifying an app | Арр | CheckApp |
| Creating an AppCode | AppCode | CreateAppCode |
| Generating an AppCode | AppCode | CreateAppCodeAuto |
| Deleting an AppCode | AppCode | DeleteAppCode |
| Configuring access control settings for an app | AppAcl | UpdateAppAcl |
| Deleting access control settings of an app | AppAcl | DeleteAppAcl |
| Creating a credential quota | AppQuota | CreateAppQuota |
| Modifying a credential quota | AppQuota | UpdateAppQuota |
| Deleting a credential quota | AppQuota | DeleteAppQuota |
| Binding a credential quota with credentials | AppQuotaBinding AssociateAppsFor Quota | |
| Unbinding a credential quota from a credential | AppQuotaBinding | DisassociateAppQuota- WithApp |

Disabling CTS

Disable CTS by following the procedure in **Deleting a Tracker**.

10.2 Querying Real-Time Traces

Scenarios

After you enable CTS and the management tracker is created, CTS starts recording operations on cloud resources. After a data tracker is created, the system starts

recording operations on data in OBS buckets. CTS stores operation records generated in the last seven days.

This section describes how to query and export operation records of the last seven days on the CTS console.

- Viewing Real-Time Traces in the Trace List of the New Edition
- Viewing Real-Time Traces in the Trace List of the Old Edition

Constraints

- Traces of a single account can be viewed on the CTS console. Multi-account traces can be viewed only on the Trace List page of each account, or in the OBS bucket or the CTS/system log stream configured for the management tracker with the organization function enabled.
- You can only query operation records of the last seven days on the CTS console. To store operation records for more than seven days, you must configure an OBS bucket to transfer records to it. Otherwise, you cannot query the operation records generated seven days ago.
- After performing operations on the cloud, you can query management traces on the CTS console 1 minute later and query data traces on the CTS console 5 minutes later.

Viewing Real-Time Traces in the Trace List of the New Edition

- 1. Log in to the management console.
- Click in the upper left corner and choose Management & GovernanceManagement & Deployment > Cloud Trace Service. The CTS console is displayed.
- 3. Choose **Trace List** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 4. On the **Trace List** page, use advanced search to query traces. You can combine one or more filters.
 - **Trace Name**: Enter a trace name.
 - Trace ID: Enter a trace ID.
 - Resource Name: Enter a resource name. If the cloud resource involved in the trace does not have a resource name or the corresponding API operation does not involve the resource name parameter, leave this field empty.
 - **Resource ID**: Enter a resource ID. Leave this field empty if the resource has no resource ID or if resource creation failed.
 - Trace Source: Select a cloud service name from the drop-down list.
 - Resource Type: Select a resource type from the drop-down list.
 - **Operator**: Select one or more operators from the drop-down list.
 - Trace Status: Select normal, warning, or incident.
 - **normal**: The operation succeeded.
 - warning: The operation failed.

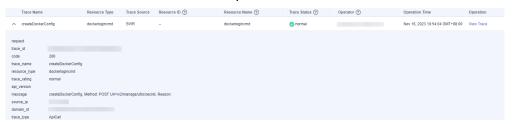
- **incident**: The operation caused a fault that is more serious than the operation failure, for example, causing other faults.
- Time range: Select **Last 1 hour**, **Last 1 day**, or **Last 1 week**, or specify a custom time range.
- 5. On the **Trace List** page, you can also export and refresh the trace list, and customize the list display settings.
 - Enter any keyword in the search box and click

 to filter desired traces.
 - Click Export to export all traces in the query result as an .xlsx file. The file can contain up to 5000 records.
 - Click $^{\mathbb{C}}$ to view the latest information about traces.
 - Click to customize the information to be displayed in the trace list. If
 Auto wrapping is enabled (), excess text will move down to the next line; otherwise, the text will be truncated. By default, this function is disabled.
- 6. For details about key fields in the trace structure, see **Trace Structure**section "Trace References" > "Trace Structure" and **Example Traces**section "Trace References" > "Example Traces".
- 7. (Optional) On the **Trace List** page of the new edition, click **Go to Old Edition** in the upper right corner to switch to the **Trace List** page of the old edition.

Viewing Real-Time Traces in the Trace List of the Old Edition

- 1. Log in to the management console.
- 2. Click in the upper left corner and choose Management & GovernanceManagement & Deployment > Cloud Trace Service. The CTS console is displayed.
- 3. Choose **Trace List** in the navigation pane on the left.
- 4. Each time you log in to the CTS console, the new edition is displayed by default. Click **Go to Old Edition** in the upper right corner to switch to the trace list of the old edition.
- 5. Set filters to search for your desired traces. The following filters are available:
 - Trace Type, Trace Source, Resource Type, and Search By: Select a filter from the drop-down list.
 - If you select **Resource ID** for **Search By**, specify a resource ID.
 - If you select **Trace name** for **Search By**, specify a trace name.
 - If you select **Resource name** for **Search By**, specify a resource name.
 - Operator: Select a user.
 - Trace Status: Select All trace statuses, Normal, Warning, or Incident.
 - Time range: You can query traces generated during any time range in the last seven days.
 - Click **Export** to export all traces in the query result as a CSV file. The file can contain up to 5000 records.

- 6. Click Query.
- 7. On the **Trace List** page, you can also export and refresh the trace list.
 - Click Export to export all traces in the query result as a CSV file. The file can contain up to 5000 records.
 - Click \mathbb{C} to view the latest information about traces.
- 8. Click $\stackrel{\vee}{}$ on the left of a trace to expand its details.



9. Click View Trace in the Operation column. The trace details are displayed.

- For details about key fields in the trace structure, see Trace Structuresection
 "Trace References" > "Trace Structure" and Example Tracessection "Trace
 References" > "Example Traces".
- 11. (Optional) On the **Trace List** page of the old edition, click **New Edition** in the upper right corner to switch to the **Trace List** page of the new edition.

1 1 Shared Gateway (for Existing Users)

11.1 Using APIG

API Gateway (APIG) is a fully managed service that enables you to securely build, manage, and deploy APIs at any scale with high performance and availability. With APIG, you can easily integrate your internal service systems and selectively expose your service capabilities through its **API opening** and **API calling** functions.

API Opening

Enterprises and developers selectively expose their services and data through APIG.

API providers API Gateway Services VPC channels management Order service Access control Signature keys Search service Open APIS. Request throttling SDK management Data Authentication Policy routes Stock market conditions Monitoring and Parameter Meteorological data alarm

Figure 11-1 API opening

The following figure shows the API opening process.

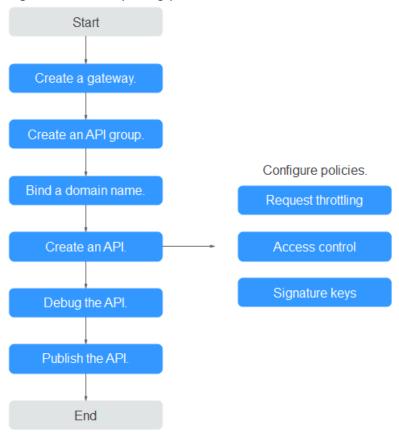


Figure 11-2 API opening process

a. Create a gateway.

Alternatively, use the **shared gateway**.

b. Create an API group.

Each API belongs to an API group. Create a group before creating an API.

c. Bind a domain name.

Before exposing an API, bind an independent domain name to the group so that users can access the API.

You can debug the API using the default subdomain name allocated to the group to which the API belongs. The subdomain name can be called a maximum of 1000 times every day.

d. Create an API.

Encapsulate existing backend services into standard RESTful APIs and expose them to external systems.

After creating an API, configure the following settings to control API access:

Request throttling

Set the maximum number of times the API can be called within a time period to protect backend services.

Access control

Set a blacklist or whitelist to deny or allow API access from specific IP addresses or accounts.

Signature keys

Signature keys are used by backend services to verify the identity of APIG and ensure secure access.

e. Debug the API.

Verify whether the API is working normally.

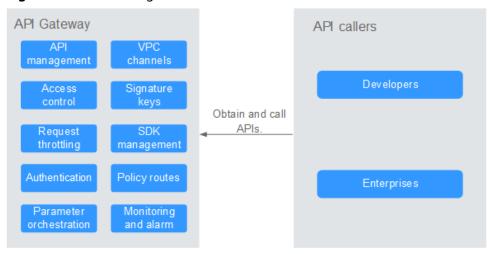
f. Publish the API.

The API can be called only after it has been published in an environment.

API calling

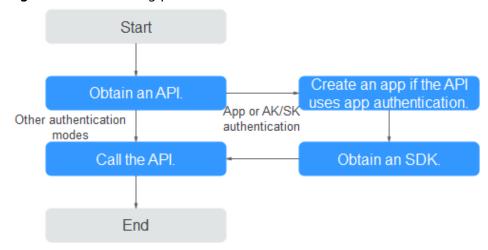
Enterprises and developers obtain and call APIs of other providers, thereby reducing development time and costs.

Figure 11-3 API calling



The following figure shows the API calling process.

Figure 11-4 API calling process



a. Obtain an API.

Obtain the API request information, including the domain name, protocol, method, path, and authentication mode.

b. Create an app.

For an API that uses app authentication, create an app to generate an AppKey and AppSecret. Bind the app to the API so that you can call the API through app authentication.

c. Obtain an SDK.

Use the SDK to generate a signature for the AK/SK and call the API.

d. Call the API.

Obtain the API using its access address and perform authentication based on its authentication mode.

11.2 Accessing the Shared Gateway

To access the shared gateway console as an existing user, perform the following steps:

- **Step 1** Log in to the APIG console.
- **Step 2** In the upper right corner of the **Overview** page, click **Access Shared Gateway**. The **Shared Gateway** page is displayed.

----End

11.3 API Group Management

11.3.1 Creating an API Group

Scenario

Before creating an API, you must create an API group. An API group contains different APIs used for the same service.

Ⅲ NOTE

Each API can only belong to one API group.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- Step 2 In the navigation pane, choose API Publishing > API Groups.
- **Step 3** Click **Create API Group**, and set the parameters described in **Table 11-1**.

Table 11-1 Parameters for creating an API group

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| Name | API group name. |
| Description | Description of the API group. |

Step 4 Click OK.

After the API group is created, it is displayed in the API group list.

□ NOTE

- The system automatically allocates a subdomain name to the API group for internal testing. The subdomain name can be accessed 1000 times a day.
- APIs created in the shared gateway can be accessed over public networks by using the subdomain name of the group to which the APIs belong.
- To make your APIs available for users to access, bind independent domain names to the API group to which the APIs belong.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After the API group is created, bind independent domain names to it so that API callers can use the domain names to call APIs in the group. For more information, see **Binding a Domain Name**.

11.3.2 Binding a Domain Name

Scenario

Before you open an API, you must bind one or more independent domain names to the group to which the API belongs.

Ⅲ NOTE

• In the shared gateway, you cannot bind the same independent domain name to different API groups.

Note the following points before you bind a domain name:

- Subdomain name: After an API group is created, the system automatically allocates a unique subdomain name to it for internal testing. The subdomain name can be accessed 1000 times a day, but it cannot be modified.
- Independent domain name: You can add five custom domain names for API callers to call your open APIs. There is no limit on the number of times these domain names can be accessed.

Prerequisites

- 1. There is an independent domain name available.
- Shared gateway: A CNAME record points the independent domain name to the subdomain name of the API group. For details, see Adding a CNAME Record Set.
- 3. If the API group contains APIs that are called through HTTPS, there needs to be **SSL certificates** configured for the independent domain name. SSL certificates can only be added manually with a custom name, content, and a key.

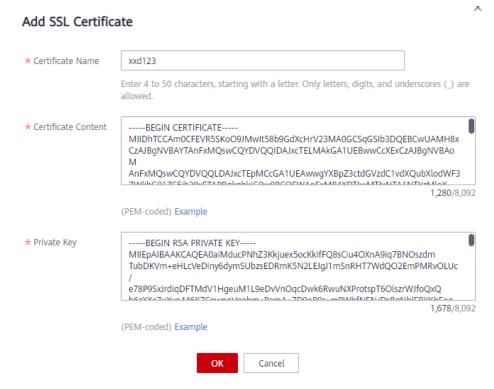
Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 3** Go to the **Domain Names** tab page using one of the following methods:
 - Click the name of the target API group, and click the **Domain Names** tab on the displayed API group details page.
 - In the Operation column of the target API group, choose More > Manage Domain Name.
- Step 4 Click Bind Independent Domain Name and enter a domain name.
- Step 5 Click OK.

If the domain name is not needed, click **Unbind** to unbind it from the API group.

- **Step 6** (Optional) If the API group contains APIs that are accessed through HTTPS, add an SSL certificate.
 - 1. Click Add SSL Certificate.
 - 2. Enter the name, content, and key of the **obtained SSL certificate**, and click **OK**.

Figure 11-5 Adding an SSL certificate



■ NOTE

- Currently, you can only add SSL certificates in the PEM format. To add SSL certificates of other formats, convert the certificates into the PEM format first.
- To replace or edit an SSL certificate, click next to the certificate name. The certificate content and key will not be visible after you click **OK** to add the certificate. If the content has been updated, add the entire content or key again.
- If you do not require an SSL certificate, click **Delete SSL Certificate** in the row containing the certificate to delete it.

----End

Troubleshooting

- Failure in binding an independent domain name: The independent domain name is not CNAMEd to the subdomain name of the API group, or the independent domain name already exists.
- Failure in adding an SSL certificate: The domain name of the SSL certificate is different from the domain name for which you add the SSL certificate.

Follow-Up Operations

After binding independent domain names to the API group, create APIs in the group to selectively expose backend capabilities. For details, see **Creating an API**.

11.3.3 Deleting an API Group

Scenario

You can delete an API group if you do not require it.

API groups that contain APIs cannot be deleted.

Prerequisites

You have created an API group.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 3** Delete an API group. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the **Operation** column of the target API group, choose **More** > **Delete**.
 - Click the name of the target API group, and click **Delete Group** in the upper right corner of the displayed API group details page.
- Step 4 Enter DELETE and click Yes.

----End

11.3.4 Adding a Gateway Response

Scenario

A gateway response is displayed if APIG fails to process an API request. APIG provides a set of default responses and also allows you to create gateway responses with custom status codes and content, on the **API Groups** page. The response content must be in JSON format.

For example, the content of a default gateway response is as follows:

```
{"error_code": "$context.error.code", "error_msg": "$context.error.message", "request_id": "$context.requestId"}
```

You can add a response with the following content:

```
{"errorcode": "$context.error.code", "errormsg": "$context.error.message", "requestid": "$context.requestId","apild": "$context.apild"}
```

You can add more fields to or delete existing fields from the JSON body.

∩ NOTE

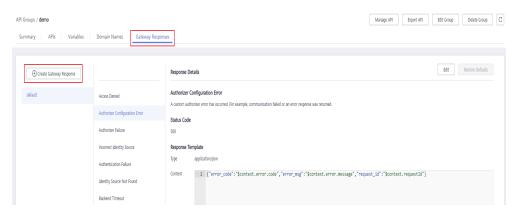
- The default gateway responses provided by APIG can be edited.
- You can create gateway responses and configure different responses for APIs in the same API group.
- The type of a gateway response cannot be changed. For details, see **Response Types**.
- Gateway responses can contain the API gateway context variables (starting with \$context). For details, see APIG Context Variables.

Prerequisites

You have created an API group.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 3** Locate the API group for which you want to create or modify a gateway response, and click the group name to go to the API group details page.
- **Step 4** Click the **Gateway Responses** tab and create a gateway response.



■ NOTE

- To edit a response, click the **Edit** button in the upper right corner and modify the status code and content of the response.
- You can modify only the status code and content of a default or custom gateway response, and you cannot change the response type.
- Error information and other response details can be obtained using variables. For details about the supported variables, see **Table 11-3**.

----End

Response Types

Table 11-2 lists the response types supported by APIG. You can define status codes of responses to meet your service requirements.

Table 11-2 Error Response types supported by APIG

| Response Name | Default Status Code | Description |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Access Denied | 403 | Access denied. For example, the access control policy is triggered or an attack is detected. |
| Authorizer Configuration Error | 500 | A custom authorizer error has occurred. For example, communication failed or an error response was returned. |
| Authorizer Failed | 500 | The custom authorization failed. |
| Incorrect Identity Source | 401 | The identity source of the custom authorizer is missing or invalid. |
| Authentication Failure | 401 | IAM or app authentication failed. |
| Identity Source Not Found | 401 | No identity source has been specified. |
| Backend Timeout | 504 | Communication with the backend service timed out. |
| Backend Unavailable | 502 | The backend service is unavailable due to communication error. |
| Default 4XX | - | Another 4XX error occurred. |
| Default 5XX | - | Another 5XX error occurred. |
| No API Found | 404 | No API is found. |
| Incorrect Request Parameters | 400 | The request parameters are incorrect or the HTTP method is not supported. |
| Request Throttled | 429 | The request was rejected due to request throttling. |

| Response Name | Default Status Code | Description |
|------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Unauthorized App | 401 | The app you are using has not been authorized to call the API. |

APIG Context Variables

Table 11-3 Variables that can be used in response message body

| Variable | Description |
|---|--|
| \$context.apild | API ID. |
| \$context.appld | ID of the app that calls the API. |
| \$context.requestId | Request ID generated when the API is called. |
| \$context.stage | Deployment environment in which the API is called. |
| \$context.sourcelp | Source IP address of the API caller. |
| \$context.authorizer.fronten d.property | Values of the specified attribute-value pairs mapped to the context in the frontend custom authorizer response |
| \$context.authorizer.backend .property | Values of the specified attribute-value pairs mapped to the context in the backend custom authorizer response |
| \$context.error.message | Error message. |
| \$context.error.code | Error code. |
| \$context.error.type | Error type. |

11.4 API Management

11.4.1 Creating an API

Scenario

You can selectively expose your services by configuring their APIs in APIG.

To create an API, set the basic information and define the API request, backend service, and responses.

■ NOTE

APIG uses a REST-based API architecture, so API opening and calling must comply with related RESTful API specifications.

Prerequisites

- You have created an API group. If no API group is available, create one during API creation.
- If the backend service of the API is deployed in a VPC, you have created a VPC channel to access the service by following the procedure in Creating a VPC Channel. You can also create a VPC channel during API creation.

Setting Basic Information

- **Step 1** Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 3** Click **Create API**, and set the parameters listed in **Table 11-4**.

Table 11-4 Basic information

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Name | API name. It is recommended that you enter a name based on naming rules to facilitate search. |
| API Group | The group to which the API belongs. If no API group is available, click Create API Group to create one. |
| Gateway Response | Displayed if APIG fails to process an API request. APIG provides a set of default responses and also allows you to create gateway responses with custom status codes and content, on the API Groups page. The response content must be in JSON format. |
| Visibility | Determine whether the API is available to the public. Options: • Public |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------------|--|
| Security Authentication | Description The following authentication modes are available: App: Requests for the API will be authenticated by APIG. IAM: Requests for the API will be authenticated by Identity and Access Management (IAM). Custom: Requests for the API will be authenticated by using your own authentication system or service (for example, an OAuth-based authentication system). None: No authentication will be required. API calling varies depending on the authentication mode. For details, see Calling APIs. App authentication is recommended. NOTICE If you set the authentication mode of an API to IAM, any APIG user can access the API, which can result in excessive charges if the API is bombarded with malicious requests. If you set the authentication mode of an API to None, any user can access the API over public networks, which can result in excessive charges if the API is bombarded with malicious requests. If you set the authentication mode of an API to Custom, you can |
| | create a function in FunctionGraph to interconnect with your own authentication system or service. This authentication mode is not supported in regions where FunctionGraph is unavailable. |
| Simple Authenticatio n | This parameter is available only if you set Security Authentication to App . If you select app authentication, you can configure whether to enable simple authentication. In simple authentication, the X-Apig-AppCode parameter is added to the HTTP request header for quick response. APIG verifies only the AppCode and the request content does not need to be signed. Simple authentication only supports HTTPS requests and does not support HTTP requests. For details, see Adding an AppCode for Simple Authentication . NOTE After you enable simple authentication for an existing API, you need to publish the API again. For details, see Publishing an API . |
| Custom Authorizer | This parameter is mandatory if Security Authentication is set to Custom . Select a custom authorizer if you set Security Authentication to Custom . If no custom authorizer is available, click Create Custom Authorizer to create one. |
| Tag Name | Classification attribute used to quickly identify the API from other APIs. |
| Description | Description of the API. |

Step 4 Click Next.

----End

Defining API Request

Step 1 On the **Define API Request** page, set the parameters listed in **Table 11-5**.

Figure 11-6 Define API Request

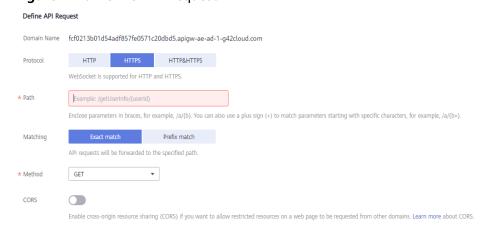


Table 11-5 Parameters for defining API requests

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| Domain Name | The subdomain automatically allocated to the API group. |
| Protocol | The protocol used for calling the API. Options: |
| | • HTTP |
| | • HTTPS |
| | HTTP&HTTPS |
| | HTTPS is recommended for transmitting important or sensitive data. |
| | APIG supports WebSocket data transmission. HTTP is equivalent to WebSocket (ws), and HTTPS is equivalent to WebSocket Secure (wss). |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Path | The path for requesting the API. |
| | Enter a path in the format of "/users/{userld}/projects". |
| | • The variable in braces ({}) is a request parameter. Ensure that it is an entire segment between a pair of slashes (/). A segment that is not marked by a pair of slashes, for example, /abc{userId}, is not supported. If you set the matching mode to Exact match, you can add a plus sign (+) to the end of the request parameter, for example, /users/{p+}. The variable p matches the segments between one or multiple pairs of slashes (/). |
| | Ensure that you define the parameters contained in the request path as input parameters. |
| | The content is case-sensitive. |
| Matching | Options: |
| | • Exact match : The API can be called only using the specified request path. |
| | Prefix match: The API can be called using paths starting with the matching characters. For example, if you set the request path to /test/AA and the matching mode to Prefix match, the API can be called using /test/AA/CC but cannot be called using /test/AACC. |
| | NOTE |
| | Exact match takes precedence over prefix match. Prefix match with a short prefix has a lower priority. For example, for request path /a/b/c (exact match), /a (prefix match), and /a/b (prefix match), the matching order is /a/b/c > /a/b > /a. |
| | If you set the matching mode to Prefix match, the characters of the API request path excluding the prefix are transparently transmitted to the backend service. For example, if you define the frontend and backend request paths of an API as /test/ and /test2/, respectively, and the API is called using /test/AA/CC, the characters AA/CC will be transparently transmitted to the backend service. The request URL received by the backend service is /test2/AA/CC/. |
| Method | The API calling method. The options are GET, POST, DELETE, PUT, PATCH, HEAD, OPTIONS, and ANY. |
| | ANY indicates that the API can be called using any request method. |
| | If you set Method to POST , PUT , PATCH , or ANY , set the request body. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| CORS | Determine whether to enable cross-origin resource sharing (CORS). |
| | CORS allows browsers to send XMLHttpRequest to servers in other domains, overcoming the limitation that Asynchronous JavaScript and XML (AJAX) can be used only within the same domain. |
| | There are two types of CORS requests: |
| | Simple requests: requests that have the Origin field in the header. |
| | Not-so-simple requests: HTTP requests sent before the actual request. |
| | If you enable CORS, you need to create another API that uses the OPTIONS method. For details, see CORS. |
| Body | Available for Method set to POST , PUT , PATCH , or ANY . |
| | Enter the description of the request body in the API request to help API callers understand how to correctly encapsulate API requests. |

Step 2 (Optional) Set input parameters.

Input parameters are transmitted together with the request when the API is called.

- 1. Click Add Input Parameter.
- 2. Set the parameters listed in **Table 11-6**.

Table 11-6 Input parameter definition

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Name | Name of the input parameter. If you set the parameter location to PATH , ensure that the parameter name is the same as that defined in the request path. NOTE |
| | - The parameter name is not case-sensitive. It cannot start with x-apig- or x-sdk |
| | The parameter name cannot be x-stage. If you set the parameter location to HEADER, ensure that the parameter name is not Authorization or X-Auth-Token and does not contain underscores (_). |
| Location | Position of the parameter in requests. The options are PATH , HEADER , and QUERY . |
| | NOTE If you set the parameter location to PATH, you must include the parameter in the request path. |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Туре | Type of the parameter value. Options: STRING and NUMBER. NOTE Set the type of Boolean parameters to STRING. |
| Mandatory | Determine whether the input parameter is required in each request sent to call the API. If you select Yes , API requests that do not contain the input parameter will be rejected. |
| Passthrough | Determine whether to transparently transmit the input parameter to the backend service. |
| Default Value | The value that will be used if no value is specified for the input parameter when the API is called. If the input parameter is not specified in a request, APIG will automatically send the default value to the backend service. |
| Enumerated Value | Enumerated value of the input parameter. Use commas (,) to separate multiple enumerated values. The value of this input parameter can only be one of the enumerated values. |
| Minimum Length | The minimum length of the parameter value. Only numbers are allowed. |
| Maximum Length | The maximum length of the parameter value. Only numbers are allowed. |
| Example | Example value for the parameter. |
| Description | Description of the parameter. |

3. Click OK.

Step 3 Click Next.

----End

Defining Backend Service

APIG allows you to define multiple backend policies for different scenarios. Requests that meet specified conditions will be forwarded to the corresponding backend. For example, you can have certain requests to an API forwarded to a specific backend by specifying the source IP address in the policy conditions of the backend.

You can define a maximum of five backend policies for an API in addition to the default backend.

Step 1 Define the default backend.

API requests that do not meet the conditions of any backend will be forwarded to the default backend.

On the **Define Backend Request** page, select a backend type.

Table 11-7, Table 11-8, and Table 11-9 describe the backend service parameters.

Table 11-7 Parameters for defining an HTTP/HTTPS backend service

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------------------|--|
| Protocol | HTTP or HTTPS. This protocol must be the one used by the backend service. NOTE APIG supports WebSocket data transmission. HTTP is equivalent to WebSocket (ws), and HTTPS is equivalent to WebSocket Secure (wss). HTTPS is recommended for transmitting important or sensitive data. |
| Method | The API calling method. The options are GET, POST, DELETE, PUT, PATCH, HEAD, OPTIONS, and ANY. |
| | ANY indicates that the API can be called using any request method. |
| VPC Channel | Determine whether the backend service will be accessed using a VPC channel. |
| | • If yes, select a VPC channel. To ensure a successful health check and service availability, configure the security groups of cloud servers in each VPC channel to allow access from 100.125.0.0/16. |
| | • If no, configure the backend service address. Enter a backend address in the format of "backend service IP address or domain name":"port number". The default port (80 for HTTP and 443 for HTTPS) will be used if no port is specified. |
| | To use environment variables in the backend address, enclose the variables with number signs (#), for example, #ipaddress#. You can use multiple environment variables, for example, #ipaddress##test#. |
| Host Header (if applicable) | This parameter is available only if you set VPC Channel to Configure. |
| | Define a host header for requests to be sent to cloud servers associated with the VPC channel. By default, the original host header in each request will be used. |
| Path | The request path (URI) of the backend service. Ensure that any parameters in the path are enclosed in braces ({}). For example, /getUserInfo/{userId}. |
| | If the path contains an environment variable, enclose the environment variable in number signs (#), for example, / #path#. You can use multiple environment variables, for example, /#path##request#. |
| Timeout (ms) | Backend request timeout. Range: 1–60,000 ms. If a backend timeout error occurs during API debugging, increase the timeout to locate the reason. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Backend Authenticatio n | Determine whether your backend service needs to authenticate API requests. |
| | If you enable this option, select a custom authorizer for backend authentication. Custom authorizers are functions that are created in FunctionGraph to implement an authentication logic or to invoke an authentication service. |
| | NOTE Backend authentication relies on FunctionGraph and is only available in certain regions. |

Table 11-8 Parameters for defining a FunctionGraph backend service

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|---|
| FunctionURN | Identifier of the requested function. Click Select Function URN to specify a function URN. |
| Version/Alias | Select a function version or alias. For details, see sections "Managing Versions" and "Managing Aliases" in the FunctionGraph User Guide. |
| Invocation Mode | Synchronous: synchronous invocation. When receiving an invocation request, FunctionGraph immediately processes the request and returns a result. The client closes the connection once it has received a response from the backend. |
| | Asynchronous: asynchronous invocation. The function invocation results of client requests do not matter to clients. When it receives a request, FunctionGraph queues the request, returns a response, and then processes requests one by one in idle state. |
| Timeout (ms) | Backend request timeout. For details, see Table 11-7. |
| Backend Authenticatio n | For details, see the description about backend authentication in Table 11-7. |

Table 11-9 Parameters for defining a Mock backend service

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| Status Code | HTTP status code for API response. If your gateway does not support status codes, contact technical support to upgrade it. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Response | You can use Mock for API development, debugging, and verification. It enables APIG to return a response without sending the request to the backend. This is useful if you need to test APIs when the backend is unavailable. |
| Backend Authenticatio n | For details, see the description about backend authentication in Table 11-7 . |
| Header Parameters | API response headers. Click Add Header , and enter the parameter name, value, and description. |

Ⅲ NOTE

- If you have defined an environment variable in the backend request path, the API cannot be debugged on the API debugging page.
- For variables defined in the backend request path of an API, corresponding environment variables and their values must be configured. Otherwise, the API cannot be published because there will be no values that can be assigned to the variables.
- Environment variable names are case-sensitive.

Step 2 (Optional) Add a backend policy.

You can add backend policies to forward requests to different backend services.

- 1. Click Add Backend Policy.
- 2. Set parameters by referring to Table 11-10 and Table 11-7.

Figure 11-7 Adding a backend policy

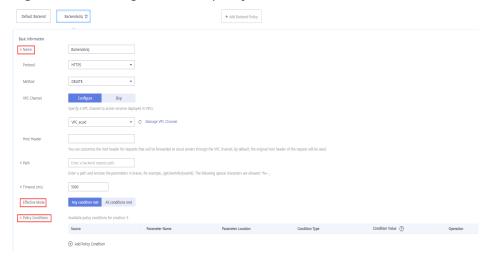


Table 11-10 Backend policy parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------|--|
| Name | The backend policy name. |
| Effective Mode | Any condition met: The backend policy takes effect if any of the policy conditions has been met. |
| | All conditions met: The backend policy takes effect only when all the policy conditions have been met. |
| Policy Conditions | Conditions that must be met for the backend policy to take effect. Set conditions by referring to Table 11-11 . |

Table 11-11 Policy conditions

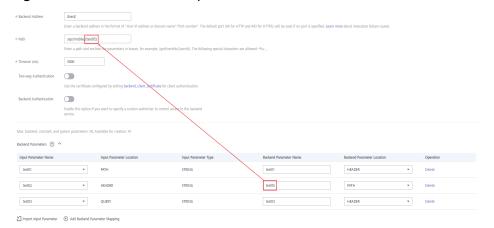
| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Source | - Source IP address |
| | – Input parameter |
| | NOTICE Input parameters (for example, headers) set as policy conditions must have already been defined in the API request settings. |
| Parameter Name | When setting Source to Input parameter , select an input parameter. |
| Parameter Location | The parameter location is displayed only if you set Source to Input parameter . |
| Condition Type | This parameter is required only if you set Source to Input parameter . |
| | Equal: The request parameter must be equal to the specified value. |
| | Enumerated: The request parameter must be equal to any of the enumerated values. |
| | Matching: The request parameter must be equal to any value of the regular expression. |
| Condition Value | Set a condition value according to the condition type. |
| | – Equal : Enter a value. |
| | Enumerated: Enter multiple values and separate them using commas. |
| | - Matching : Enter a range, for example, [0-5] . |
| | If you have set Source to Source IP address , enter one or more IP addresses and separate them using commas. |

Step 3 (Optional) Set backend parameters.

Input parameters of the API are mapped to corresponding backend parameters in backend requests.

- 1. Click next to **Backend Parameters**, and define backend parameters. You can use one of the following methods:
 - Click Import Input Parameter. All the defined input parameters are automatically displayed.
 - Click Add Backend Parameter Mapping, and add required backend parameters.
- 2. Modify the mappings based on the parameters and their locations in backend requests. **Figure 11-8** highlights the backend parameters.

Figure 11-8 Backend service parameters



- a. If you set the parameter location to **PATH**, ensure that the parameter name is the same as that defined in the backend request path.
- b. The name and location of an input parameter can be different from those of the mapped backend request parameter.

- The parameter name is not case-sensitive. It cannot start with x-apig- or x-sdk-
- The parameter name cannot be x-stage.
- If you set the parameter location to **HEADER**, ensure that the parameter name does not contain underscores (_).
- c. In the preceding figure, parameters **test01** and **test03** are located in the path and query positions of API requests, and their values will be received in the header of backend requests. **test02** is located in the header of API requests, and its value will be received through **test05** in the path of backend requests.

For example, test01 is abc, test02 is def, and test03 is xyz.

API request:

curl -ik -H 'test02:def' -X GET https://www.example01.com/v1.0/abc?test03=xyz

Backend request:

curl -ik -H 'test01:abc' -H 'test03:xyz' -X GET https://www.example02.com/v1.0/def

Step 4 (Optional) Set constant parameters.

You can define constant parameters for the backend service to receive constants that are invisible to API callers. APIG adds constant parameters to specified positions in the request sent to the backend service.

NOTICE

Constant parameters will be stored as plaintext. To prevent information leakage, do not contain sensitive information in these parameters.

- 1. Click with next to Constant Parameters.
- 2. Click Add Constant Parameter, and set the parameters listed in Table 11-12.

Figure 11-9 Adding constant parameters



Table 11-12 Setting constant parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---|
| Name | Constant parameter name. If you set the parameter location to PATH , ensure that the parameter name is the same as that defined in the backend request path. |
| | NOTE |
| | The parameter name is not case-sensitive. It cannot start with x-apig- or x-sdk |
| | – The parameter name cannot be x-stage . |
| | If you set the parameter location to HEADER, ensure that the parameter name does not contain underscores (_). |
| Location | Position of the parameter in requests. |
| | The options are PATH, QUERY, and HEADER. |
| Value | Value of the parameter. |
| Description | Description of the constant parameter. |

□ NOTE

- APIG sends requests containing constant parameters to backend services after percent-encoding of special parameter values. Ensure that the backend services support percent-encoding. For example, parameter value [apig] becomes %5Bapig %5D after percent-encoding.
- For values of path parameters, the following characters will be percent-encoded:
 ASCII codes 0-31, blank symbols, ASCII codes 127-255, and special characters ?><//>
 %#"[\]^`{|}
- For values of query strings, the following characters will be percent-encoded: ASCII codes 0–31, blank symbols, ASCII codes 127–255, and special characters >=<+& %#"[\]^`{|}

Step 5 (Optional) Set system parameters.

System parameters refer to runtime parameters regarding gateway running and frontend and backend authentications. The parameters are transferred to the API backend service for access control and custom authentication.

- 1. Click ✓ next to **System Parameters**.
- 2. Click Add System Parameter, and set the parameters listed in Table 11-13.

Figure 11-10 Adding a system parameter



Table 11-13 System parameters

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|---|
| System Parameter Type | Default gateway parameter: Default parameters supported by APIG. |
| | Frontend authentication parameter: Parameters to be displayed in the frontend custom authentication result. This option is available only if you select Custom for Security Authentication on the Set Basic Information page. |
| | Backend authentication parameter: Parameters to be displayed in the backend custom authentication result. This option is available only if you enable Backend Authentication on the Define Backend Request page. |

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------------------------|---|
| System Parameter Name | If System Parameter Type is Default gateway parameter, select any of the following parameters. |
| | • sourceIp: source IP address of the API caller |
| | • stage: environment in which the API is called |
| | ■ apild: ID of the API |
| | ■ appld: ID of the app that calls the API |
| | requestId: request ID generated when the API is called |
| | serverAddr: IP address of the gateway server |
| | serverName: name of the gateway server |
| | ■ handleTime: processing time of the API request |
| | providerAppId: app ID of the API provider |
| | Ensure that the frontend and backend authentication parameters are consistent with the return result parameters defined for the corresponding custom authorizer function. For details about how to create a custom authorizer function and obtain returned result parameters, see API Gateway Developer Guide. |
| Backend Parameter Name | Name of the backend parameter to which the system parameter will be mapped. NOTE |
| | The parameter name is not case-sensitive. It cannot start with x-apig- or x-sdk The parameter name cannot be x-stage. If you set the parameter location to HEADER, ensure that the parameter name does not contain underscores (_). |
| Backend Parameter Location | Position of the backend parameter in requests. |
| Description | Description of the system parameter. |

Step 6 Click Next.

----End

Defining Responses

Step 1 On the **Define Response** page, set the parameters listed in **Table 11-14**.

Table 11-14 Defining responses

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Example Success Response | An example of a response returned when the API is called successfully. |
| Example Failure Response | An example of a response returned when the API fails to be called. |

Step 2 Click Finish.

After the API is created, click its name in the API list to view details.

----End

FAQs About API Creation

Does APIG Support Multiple Backend Endpoints?

What Are the Possible Causes If a Backend Service Fails to Be Invoked or the Invocation Times Out?

Why Am I Seeing the Message "No backend available"?

Follow-Up Operations

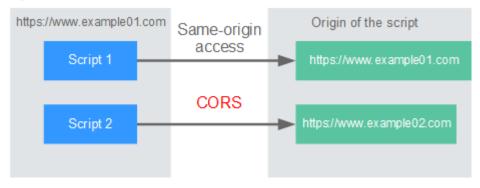
After creating an API, verify it by following the procedure in **Debugging an API**.

11.4.2 CORS

What Is CORS?

For security reasons, browsers restrict cross-origin requests initiated from within scripts. This means that a web application can only request resources from its origin. The CORS mechanism allows browsers to send XMLHttpRequest to servers in other domains and request access to the resources there.

Figure 11-11 CORS



There are two types of CORS requests:

• Simple requests

Simple requests must meet the following conditions:

- a. The request method is HEAD, GET, or POST.
- b. The request header contains only the following fields:
 - Accept
 - Accept-Language
 - Content-Language
 - Last-Event-ID
 - Content-Type (application/x-www-form-urlencoded, multipart/ form-data, or text/plain)

In the header of a simple request, browsers automatically add the **Origin** field to specify the origin (including the protocol, domain, and port) of the request. After receiving such a request, the target server determines whether the request is safe and can be accepted based on the origin. If the server sends a response containing the **Access-Control-Allow-Origin** field, the server accepts the request.

• Not-so-simple requests

Requests that do not meet the conditions for simple requests are not-so-simple requests.

Before sending a not-so-simple request, browsers send an HTTP preflight request to the target server to confirm whether the origin the web page is loaded from is in the allowed origin list, and to confirm which HTTP request methods and header fields can be used. If the preflight request is successful, browsers send simple requests to the server.

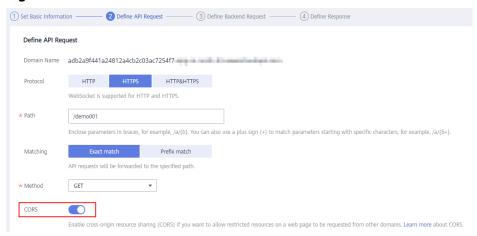
Configuring CORS

CORS is disabled by default. To enable CORS for an API, perform the operations described in this section.

Simple CORS requests

When creating an API, enable CORS on the API request configuration page. For more information, see **Simple Request**.

Figure 11-12 CORS



Not-so-simple CORS requests

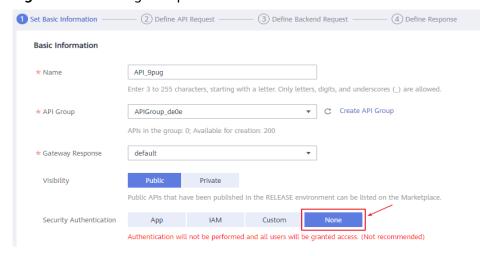
NOTICE

If your API will receive not-so-simple requests, **create another API that will be accessed using the OPTIONS method** in the same group as the target API to receive preflight requests.

Follow this procedure to define the preflight request API. For more information, see **Not-So-Simple Request**.

a. On the **Set Basic Information** page, select **None** to skip over security authentication.

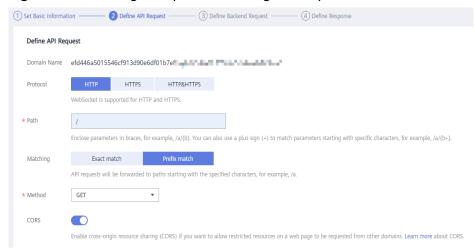
Figure 11-13 Preflight request - None authentication



- b. On the **Define API Request** page, perform the following settings:
 - Protocol: The same protocol used by the API with CORS enabled.
 - Path: Enter a slash (/).
 - Method: Select OPTIONS.

CORS: Enabled.

Figure 11-14 Preflight request - Defining API requests



c. Select the **Mock** backend type.

Figure 11-15 Preflight request - Mock backend service



Simple Request

When creating an API that will receive simple requests, enable CORS for the API.

Scenario 1: If CORS is enabled and the response from the backend does not contain a CORS header, APIG handles requests from any domain, and returns the **Access-Control-Allow-Origin** header. For example:

Request sent by a browser and containing the Origin header field:

GET /simple HTTP/1.1
Host: www.test.com
Origin: http://www.cors.com
Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded; charset=utf-8
Accept: application/json
Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT

Origin: This field is required to specify the origin (http://www.cors.com in this example) of the request. APIG and the backend service determine based on the origin whether the request is safe and can be accepted.

Response sent by the backend service:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

{"status":"200"}

Response sent by APIG:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

X-Request-Id: 454d689fa69847610b3ca486458fb08b

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *

{"status":"200"}

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: This field is required. The asterisk (*) means that APIG handles requests sent from any domain.

Scenario 2: If CORS is enabled and the response from the backend contains a CORS header, the header will overwrite that added by APIG. The following messages are used as examples:

Request sent by a browser and containing the Origin header field:

GET /simple HTTP/1.1 Host: www.test.com Origin: http://www.cors.com

Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded; charset=utf-8

Accept: application/json

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT

Origin: This field is required to specify the origin (http://www.cors.com in this example) of the request. APIG and the backend service determine based on the origin whether the request is safe and can be accepted.

Response sent by the backend service:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: http://www.cors.com

{"status":"200"}

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: Indicates that the backend service accepts requests sent from **http://www.cors.com**.

Response sent by APIG:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

X-Request-Id: 454d689fa69847610b3ca486458fb08b Access-Control-Allow-Origin: http://www.cors.com

{"status":"200"}

The CORS header in the backend response overwrites that in APIG's response.

Not-So-Simple Request

When creating an API that will receive not-so-simple requests, enable CORS for the API by following the instructions in **Configuring CORS**, and create another API that will be accessed using the OPTIONS method.

If you use the CORS plug-in for an API, you do not need to create another API that uses the OPTIONS method.

The request parameters of an API accessed using the OPTIONS method must be set as follows:

- API Group: The same group to which the API with CORS enabled belongs.
- **Security Authentication**: Select **None**. No authentication is required for requests received by the new API no matter which security authentication mode has been selected.
- **Protocol**: The same protocol used by the API with CORS enabled.
- **Path**: Enter a slash (/) or select the path that has been set for or matches the API with CORS enabled.
- Method: Select OPTIONS.
- CORS: Enabled.

The following are example requests and responses sent to or from a mock backend.

Request sent from a browser to an API that is accessed using the OPTIONS method:

OPTIONS /HTTP/1.1 User-Agent: curl/7.29.0 Host: localhost Accept: */* Origin: http://www.cors.com Access-Control-Request-Method: PUT Access-Control-Request-Headers: X-Sdk-Date

- **Origin**: This field is required to specify the origin from which the request has been sent.
- Access-Control-Request-Method: This field is required to specify the HTTP methods to be used by the subsequent simple requests.
- Access-Control-Request-Headers: This field is optional and used to specify the additional header fields in the subsequent simple requests.

Response sent by the backend: none

Response sent by APIG:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 02:38:48 GMT Content-Type: application/json Content-Length: 1036 Server: api-gateway

X-Request-Id: c9b8926888c356d6a9581c5c10bb4d11

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *

Access-Control-Allow-Headers: X-Stage,X-Sdk-Date,X-Sdk-Nonce,X-Proxy-Signed-Headers,X-Sdk-Content-Sha256,X-Forwarded-For,Authorization,Content-Type,Accept,Accept-Ranges,Cache-Control,Range Access-Control-Expose-Headers: X-Request-Id,X-Apig-Latency,X-Apig-Upstream-Latency,X-Apig-RateLimit-Api,X-Apig-RateLimit-User,X-Apig-RateLimit-App,X-Apig-RateLimit-Ip,X-Apig-RateLimit-Api-Allenv

Access-Control-Allow-Methods: GET,POST,PUT,DELETE,HEAD,OPTIONS,PATCH Access-Control-Max-Age: 172800

- Access-Control-Allow-Origin: This field is required. The asterisk (*) means that APIG handles requests sent from any domain.
- Access-Control-Allow-Headers: This field is required if it is contained in the request. It indicates all header fields that can be used during cross-origin access.
- Access-Control-Expose-Headers: This is the response header fields that can be viewed during cross-region access.
- Access-Control-Allow-Methods: This field is required to specify which HTTP request methods the APIG supports.
- Access-Control-Max-Age: This field is optional and used to specify the length of time (in seconds) during which the preflight result remains valid. No more preflight requests will be sent within the specified period.

Request sent by a browser and containing the Origin header field:

PUT /simple HTTP/1.1 Host: www.test.com Origin: http://www.cors.com

Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded; charset=utf-8

Accept: application/json

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT

Response sent by the backend:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

{"status":"200"}

Response sent by APIG:

HTTP/1.1 200 OK Date: Tue. 15 Jan 20

Date: Tue, 15 Jan 2019 01:25:52 GMT Content-Type: application/json

Content-Length: 16 Server: api-gateway

X-Request-Id: 454d689fa69847610b3ca486458fb08b

Access-Control-Allow-Origin: *

{"status":"200"}

11.4.3 Debugging an API

Scenario

After creating an API, debug it on the APIG console by setting HTTP headers and body parameters to verify whether the API is running normally.

- APIs with backend request paths containing variables cannot be debugged.
- If an API has been bound with a request throttling policy, the policy will not work during debugging of the API.

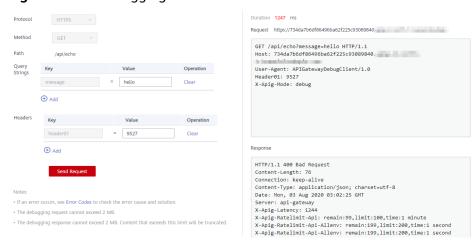
Prerequisites

- You have created an API group and API.
- You have set up the backend service of the API.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 3** Debug an API. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the Operation column of the API you want to debug, choose More > Debug.
 - Click the name of the target API, and click **Debug** in the upper right corner of the displayed API details page.

Figure 11-16 Debugging an API



On the left side, set the API request parameters listed in **Table 11-15**. On the right side, view the API request and response information after you click **Send Request**.

Table 11-15 Parameters for debugging an API

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|---|
| Protocol | This parameter can be modified only if you set Protocol to HTTP&HTTPS for the API. |
| Method | This parameter can be modified only if you set Method to ANY for the API. |
| Suffix | You can define a path only if you have set Matching to Prefix match for the API. |
| Path | Request path of the API. |
| Path Parameters | This parameter can be modified only if you have defined path parameters (such as {test}) for the API. |

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------|---|
| Query Strings | Query string parameters and values. |
| Headers | HTTP headers and values. |
| Body | This parameter can be modified only if you set Method to PATCH , POST , or PUT for the API. |

□ NOTE

The fields displayed on the debugging page vary according to the request type.

Step 4 After setting request parameters, click **Send Request**.

The box on the lower right displays the response of the API request.

- If the debugging is successful, the HTTP status code 200 and response details are displayed.
- If the request fails to be sent, an HTTP status code 4xx or 5xx is displayed. For details, see Error Codes.

Step 5 You can send more requests with different parameters and values to verify the API.

◯ NOTE

To modify the API configurations, click **Edit** in the upper right corner, and modify the parameters on the **Edit API** page.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After the API is successfully debugged, **publish** the API in a specific environment so that the API can be called by users. To ensure security of the API, create request throttling policies (see **Creating a Request Throttling Policy**), access control policies (**Creating an Access Control Policy**), and signature keys (**Creating and Using a Signature Key**) for the API.

11.4.4 Authorizing Apps to Call an API

Scenario

APIs using app authentication can only be called by apps that have been authorized to call them.

□ NOTE

- You can only authorize apps to call published APIs.
- You can authorize apps only to call APIs that use app authentication.

Prerequisites

• You have created an API group and API.

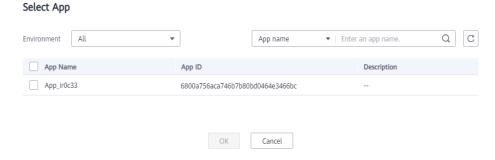
- (Optional) You have created an environment.
- You have created an app.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 3** Authorize apps to call an API. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the Operation column of the target API, choose More > Authorize App, and then click Select App.
 - Select the target API, click **Authorize App** over the API list, and then click **Select App**.
 - Authorize apps through the API details page.
 - a. Click the name of the target API.
 - b. Click the **Authorization** tab.
 - c. Click **Select App**.

To authorize an app to access multiple APIs, select the APIs, and click **Authorize App**. Click **Select App**, select the app you wish to authorize, and click **OK**. You can grant access to a maximum of 1000 APIs at a time.

Step 4 Select an environment, search for and select desired apps, and click **OK**.



Step 5 After the authorization is complete, view the authorized apps on the **Authorization** tab page or the **Authorize App** page.

□ NOTE

If an app does not need to call the API, click **Cancel Authorization** in the row containing the app to unbind it.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After you authorize an app to call an API, the API can be called using SDKs of different programming languages.

11.4.5 Publishing an API

Scenario

APIs can be called only after they have been published in an environment. You can publish APIs in different environments. APIG allows you to view the publication history (such as the version, description, time, and environment) of each API, and supports rollback of APIs to different historical versions.

◯ NOTE

- If you modify a published API, you must publish it again for the modifications to take effect in the environment in which the API has been published.
- A maximum of 10 publication records of an API are retained in an environment.

Prerequisites

- You have created an API group and API.
- You have created an environment.

Publishing an API

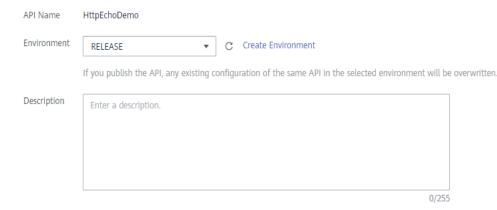
- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 3** Publish an API. You can use one of the following methods:
 - Click **Publish** in the row containing the API you want to publish.
 - Click the name of the target API, and click **Publish** in the upper right corner of the displayed API details page.

□ NOTE

To publish multiple APIs, select the APIs, and click **Publish**. You can publish a maximum of 1000 APIs at a time.

Step 4 Select the environment where the API will be published, and enter a description.

Figure 11-17 Publishing an API



- If the API has already been published in the environment, publishing it again will overwrite its definition in that environment.
- If there is no environment that meets your requirements, create a new one.

Step 5 Click Publish.

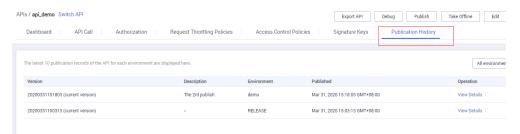
----End

Viewing Publication History

- **Step 1** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 2** Click the name of the target API.
- **Step 3** Click the **Publication History** tab.

The publication history of the API is displayed.

Figure 11-18 Viewing publication history



Step 4 Click **View Details** in the **Operation** column of a version.

The **View Details** dialog box displays the basic information, frontend and backend request information, input and constant parameters, parameter mappings, and example responses of the API.

Step 5 To roll back the API to a historical version, click **Switch Version** in the row containing the target version, and click **Yes**.

If "current version" is displayed next to the target version, the rollback was successful.

When the API is called, configuration of the current version is used instead of the previously saved configuration.

For example, an API was published in the RELEASE environment on August 1, 2018. On August 20, 2018, the API was published in the same environment after modification. If the version published on August 1 is set as the current version, configuration of this version will be used when the API is called.

----End

FAQs About API Publishing

Do I Need to Publish an API Again After Modification?

Why Can't APIs Published in a Non-RELEASE Environment Be Accessed?

Can I Invoke Different Backend Services by Publishing an API in Different Environments?

11.4.6 Taking an API Offline

Scenario

You can remove APIs that you do not need from the environments where the APIs have been published.

NOTICE

This operation will cause the APIs to be inaccessible in the environments. Ensure that you have notified users before this operation.

Prerequisites

- You have created an API group and API.
- You have published the API.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 3** Take the API offline. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the **Operation** column of the target API, choose **More** > **Take Offline**.
 - Click the name of the target API, and click **Take Offline** in the upper right corner of the API details page.

□ NOTE

To take multiple APIs offline, select the APIs, and click **Take Offline**. You can take a maximum of 1000 APIs offline at a time.

Step 4 Select the environment from which you want to take the API offline, and click **Yes**.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After taking an API offline, delete it based on the instructions provided in **Deleting an API**.

11.4.7 Deleting an API

Scenario

You can delete published APIs you no longer require.

NOTICE

- Deleted APIs cannot be accessed by apps or users who were using the APIs, so make sure you notify users before the deletion.
- Published APIs must be first taken offline and then deleted.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 3** Delete the API. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the Operation column of the API you want to delete, choose More > Delete.
 - Click the name of the target API, and click **Delete** in the upper right corner of the displayed API details page.

□ NOTE

To delete multiple APIs, select the APIs, and click **Delete**. You can delete a maximum of 1000 APIs at a time.

Step 4 Enter **DELETE** and click **Yes**.

----End

11.4.8 Importing APIs

Scenario

APIG allows you to import Swagger 2.0 APIs to existing or new API groups. Swagger is an open-source tool built based on OpenAPI specifications to design, build, record, and use REST APIs.

You can import APIs individually or in batches depending on the number of APIs contained in a Swagger file.

Prerequisites

- Supplement the extended Swagger definition of the APIs to import. If the
 extended definition does not contain the required settings, create them on the
 APIG console.
- You have sufficient API group and API quotas.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- Step 3 Click Import API.
- **Step 4** Set the parameters listed in **Table 11-16**.

Figure 11-19 Importing APIs



Table 11-16 Parameters for importing APIs

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Import | Options: |
| | New group: Import APIs to a new API group. If you select this option, the system automatically creates an API group and imports the APIs into this group. |
| | • Existing group: Import APIs to an existing API group. If you select this option, the system adds the APIs to the selected API group while retaining the existing APIs in the API group. |
| API group | Select an API group if you set Import to Existing group . |
| Basic Definition | Determine whether to overwrite an existing API if the name of the API is the same as that of an imported API. |
| Overwrite | This parameter is available only if you set Import to Existing group. |
| Extended Definition Overwrite | If this option is selected, the extended definition items (access control and request throttling policies) of an imported API will overwrite the existing policies with the same name. |

Step 5 In the **Parameter Import** area, click **File** and select a file to import.

YAML and JSON files are supported. You can preview the API content to be imported on the **Import API** page.

Figure 11-20 Parameter Import

Parameter Import



Step 6 (Optional) Configure global settings for the APIs to be imported.

You can configure the global settings for the APIs, such as frontend and backend requests, or modify other parameters of the APIs.

Figure 11-21 Configuring global settings

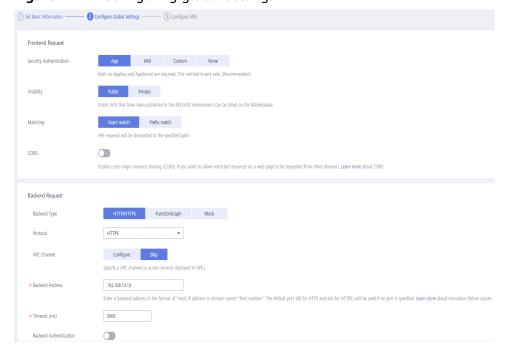
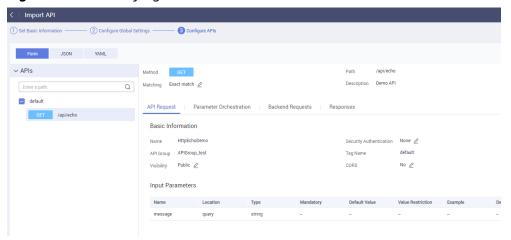


Figure 11-22 Modifying APIs



Step 7 Click **Import Now** to import the APIs.

■ NOTE

Imported APIs must be manually published so that they become available for users to access.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

Publish the imported API in an environment so that it can be called by users.

11.4.9 Exporting APIs

Scenario

You can export APIs one by one or in batches as JSON or YAML files.

Prerequisites

You have created an API group and API.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- Step 2 Click Export API.
- **Step 3** Set the parameters listed in **Table 11-17**.

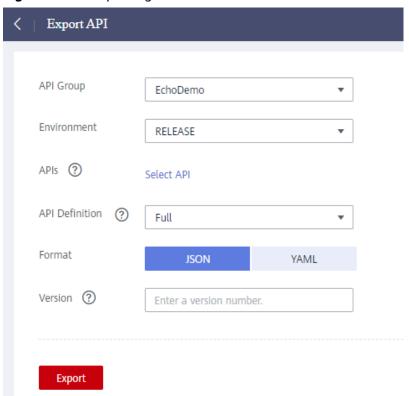


Figure 11-23 Exporting APIs

Table 11-17 Parameters for exporting APIs

| Parameter | Description |
|----------------|---|
| API Group | Select the API group from which APIs will be exported. |
| Environment | Select the environment where the APIs to be exported have been published. |
| APIs | By default, all APIs in the API group that have been published in the selected environment are exported. To export only specific APIs, click Select API , and specify the APIs you want to export. |
| API Definition | Basic: The basic definition of an API is composed of the request and response definitions. It does not include the backend definition. The request definition includes both standard and extended Swagger fields. Full: The full definition of an API is composed of the request, backend, and response definitions. |
| | Extended: The extended definition of an API is composed of the request, backend, and response definitions as well as the request throttling policy, access control policy, and other configurations of the API. |
| Format | Export APIs in JSON or YAML format. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Version | Set the version of the APIs to be exported. If you do not specify a version, the version will be set as the current date and time. |

Step 4 Click Export.

The export result is displayed on the right.

----End

11.5 Request Throttling

11.5.1 Creating a Request Throttling Policy

Scenario

Request throttling controls the number of times an API can be called within a time period to protect backend services.

To provide stable, uninterrupted services, you can create request throttling policies to control the number of calls made to your APIs.

Request throttling policies take effect for an API only if they have been bound to the API.

□ NOTE

- An API can be bound with only one request throttling policy for a given environment, but each request throttling policy can be bound to multiple APIs.
- For the shared gateway, the default request throttling limit is 200 calls per second.

Prerequisites

You have published the API to which you want to bind a request throttling policy.

Creating a Request Throttling Policy

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Request Throttling**.
- Step 3 Click Create Request Throttling Policy, and set the parameters listed in Table 11-18.

* Name Throttling_11oi Enter 3 to 64 characters, starting with a letter. Only letters, digits, and underscores (_) are allowed. API-shared Type * Period (?) Minutes 1000 ★ Max. API Requests ② (≤ Max. API Requests) Max. App Requests (?) (≤ Max. User Requests) Max. IP Address Requests (?) (≤ Max. API Requests) Description Enter a description. 0/255

Create Request Throttling Policy

Table 11-18 Parameters for creating a request throttling policy

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Name | Request throttling policy name. |
| Туре | API-based or API-shared request throttling. API-based: Request throttling is based on every API to which the policy is bound. API-shared: Request throttling is based on all APIs as a whole to which the policy is bound. |
| Period | For how long you want to limit the number of API calls. This parameter can be used together with the following parameters: • Max. API Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called within a specific period. |
| | Max. User Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by a user within a specific period. |
| | Max. App Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by an app within a specific period. |
| | Max. IP Address Requests: Limit the maximum number of times an API can be called by an IP address within a specific period. |

Cancel

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| Max. API Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called within the specified period. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| Max. User Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by a user within the specified period. This limit only applies to APIs that are accessed through app or IAM authentication. |
| | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. API Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| | If there are many users under your account that access an API, the request throttling limits of the API will apply to all these users. |
| Max. App Requests | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by an app within the specified period. This limit only applies to APIs that are accessed through app authentication. |
| | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. User Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| Max. IP Address | The maximum number of times each bound API can be called by an IP address within the specified period. |
| Requests | The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. API Requests. |
| | This parameter must be used together with Period . |
| Description | Description of the request throttling policy. |

Step 4 Click OK.

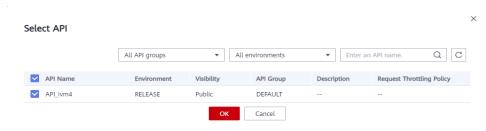
After the policy is created, it is displayed on the **Request Throttling** page. You can bind this policy to APIs to throttle API requests.

----End

Binding a Request Throttling Policy to an API

- **Step 1** Go to the page for binding a request throttling policy to an API. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the **Operation** column of the request throttling policy to be bound, click **Bind to API**, and then click **Select API**.
 - Click the name of the target request throttling policy, and click Select API on the APIs tab page.
- **Step 2** Specify an API group, environment, and API name keyword to search for the desired API.
- Step 3 Select the API and click OK.

Figure 11-24 Binding a request throttling policy to an API



If a request throttling policy is no longer needed for an API, you can unbind it. To unbind a request throttling policy from multiple APIs, select the APIs, and click **Unbind**. You can unbind a request throttling policy from a maximum of 1000 APIs at a time.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

To control the maximum number of API calls received from a specific app or tenant, specify the app or tenant to exclude by referring to Adding an Excluded App or Tenant. If an app is excluded in a request throttling policy, any threshold configured for that app takes precedence over the request throttling policy. The API and user request limits of this policy are still valid. If a tenant is excluded in a request throttling policy, any threshold configured for that tenant will be applied. The API and app request limits of this policy are still valid.

11.5.2 Deleting a Request Throttling Policy

Scenario

You can delete request throttling policies you no longer require.

Prerequisites

You have created a request throttling policy.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Request Throttling**.
- **Step 3** Delete a request throttling policy. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the **Operation** column of the request throttling policy you want to delete, click **Delete**.
 - Click the name of the target request throttling policy, and click **Delete** in the upper right corner of the displayed request throttling policy details page.

□ NOTE

- If a request throttling policy has been bound to an API, unbind the policy and then
 delete it. To unbind a request throttling policy, go to the policy details page, click
 Unbind in the row that contains the API from which you want to unbind the policy, and
 click Yes
- To delete multiple request throttling policies, select the policies, and click **Delete**. You can delete a maximum of 1000 request throttling policies at a time.

Step 4 Click Yes.

----End

11.5.3 Adding an Excluded App or Tenant

Scenario

If you want to control the number of API calls received from a specific app or tenant, add an excluded app or tenant to a request throttling policy.

Prerequisites

You have created an app or obtained an app ID of another account or an account ID.

Adding an Excluded App

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Request Throttling**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target request throttling policy.
- **Step 4** On the displayed request throttling policy details page, click the **Excluded Apps** tab.
- Step 5 Click Select Excluded App.
- **Step 6** Select an app to exclude. You can use one of the following methods:

Figure 11-25 Selecting an app

Select Excluded App

App Existing Cross-tenant appdemo Threshold 2 per 1 minute ≤ Max. API Requests OK Cancel

- To select an existing app, click **Existing**, select an app, and enter a threshold.
- To select an app of other tenants, click Cross-tenant, and enter the app ID and a threshold.

Excluded app thresholds take precedence over the value of Max. App Requests.

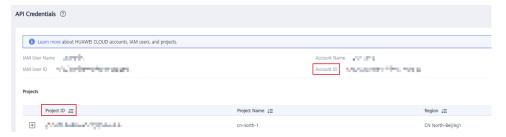
For example, a request throttling policy has been configured, with Max. API Requests being 10, Max. App Requests being 3, Period being 1 minute, and two excluded apps (max. 2 API requests for app A and max. 4 API requests for app B). If the request throttling policy is bound to an API, apps A and B can access the API 2 and 4 times within 1 minute, respectively.

----End

Adding an Excluded Tenant

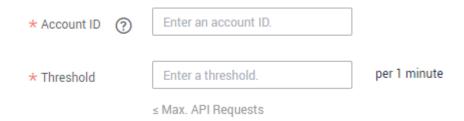
- **Step 1** Hover the mouse pointer over the username and choose **My Credentials** from the drop-down list.
- **Step 2** On the **API Credentials** page, view the account ID and project ID.

Figure 11-26 Viewing the account ID and project ID



- **Step 3** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Request Throttling**.
- **Step 4** Click the name of the target request throttling policy.
- **Step 5** Click the **Excluded Tenants** tab.
- Step 6 Click Select Excluded Tenant.
- **Step 7** In the **Select Excluded Tenant** dialog box, set the parameters listed in **Table** 11-19.

Figure 11-27 Adding an excluded tenant



| | | <u> </u> |
|--|------------|---|
| | Parameter | Description |
| | Account ID | Account ID or project ID obtained in Step 2 |

Table 11-19 Excluded tenant configuration

Enter a project ID if you will bind or have bound this policy to an API that uses app authentication. Enter an account ID if you will bind or have bound this policy to an API that uses IAM authentication. Threshold The maximum number of times an API can be called by the tenant within a specified period. The value of this parameter cannot exceed that of Max. API Requests.

Step 8 Click OK.

Excluded tenant thresholds take precedence over the value of Max. User Requests.

For example, suppose a request throttling policy is configured, with Max. API Requests being 10, Max. User Requests being 3, Period being 1 minute, and two excluded tenants (max. 2 API requests for tenant A and max. 4 API requests for tenant B). If the request throttling policy is bound to an API, tenants A and B can access the API 2 and 4 times within 1 minute, respectively.

----End

11.5.4 Removing an Excluded App or Tenant

Scenario

You can remove excluded apps or tenants from a request throttling policy. This section takes an excluded app as an example.

Prerequisites

- You have created a request throttling policy.
- You have already added an excluded app or tenant to the request throttling policy.

Removing an Excluded App

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Request Throttling**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target request throttling policy.
- **Step 4** Click the **Excluded Apps** tab on the displayed request throttling policy details
- **Step 5** In the **Operation** column of the app you want to remove, click **Remove**.

Step 6 Click Yes.

----End

Removing an Excluded Tenant

- **Step 1** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Request Throttling**.
- **Step 2** Click the name of the target request throttling policy.
- **Step 3** Click the **Excluded Tenants** tab.
- **Step 4** In the **Operation** column of the tenant you want to remove, click **Remove**.
- Step 5 Click Yes.

----End

11.6 Access Control

11.6.1 Creating an Access Control Policy

Scenario

Access control policies are a type of security measures provided by APIG. You can use them to allow or deny API access from specific IP addresses or accounts.

Access control policies take effect for an API only if they have been bound to the API.

◯ NOTE

Each API can be bound with only one access control policy for a given environment, but each access control policy can be bound to multiple APIs.

Creating an Access Control Policy

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Access Control**.
- **Step 3** Click **Create Access Control Policy**.
- **Step 4** In the **Create Access Control Policy** dialog box, set the parameters listed in **Table** 11-20.

Create Access Control Policy

*Name Access_dso| Enter 3 to 64 characters, starting with a letter. Only letters, digits, and underscores (_) are allowed. Restriction Type IP address Account name Specify IP addresses from which API requests are allowed or denied. Do not specify private IP addresses that belong to a VPC. Effect Allow Deny IP Address Operation OK Cancel

Table 11-20 Parameters for creating an access control policy

| Parameter | Description |
|---------------------|---|
| Name | Access control policy name. |
| Restriction Type | Type of the source from which API calls are to be controlled. IP address: Specify IP addresses and IP address ranges that are allowed or not allowed to access an API. |
| | Account name: Specify names of the accounts that are allowed or not allowed to access an API. |
| Effect | Options: Allow and Deny . Use this parameter along with Restriction Type to control the access of certain IP addresses or accounts to an API. |
| IP Address | IP addresses and IP address ranges that are allowed or not allowed to access an API |
| | You need to set this parameter only if you have set Restriction Type to IP address . |
| | NOTE You can set a maximum of 100 IP addresses respectively to allow or deny access. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------|--|
| Account Name | Names of the accounts that are allowed or not allowed to access an API. This parameter only applies to APIs that are accessed through IAM authentication. |
| | You need to set this parameter only if you have set Restriction Type to Account name . You can enter multiple account names and separate them with commas, for example, aaa,bbb . |
| | NOTE APIG performs access control on accounts, not IAM users created using accounts. |

Step 5 Click **OK**. You can bind the policy to APIs to control API access.

----End

Binding an Access Control Policy to an API

- **Step 1** Go to the page for binding an access control policy to an API. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the **Operation** column of the access control policy to be bound, click **Bind** to API, and then click **Select API**.
 - Click the name of the target access control policy, and click **Select API**.
- **Step 2** Specify an API group, environment, and API name keyword to search for the desired API.
- **Step 3** Select the API and click **OK**.

□ NOTE

If an access control policy is no longer needed for an API, you can unbind it from that API. To unbind an access control policy from multiple APIs, select the APIs, and click **Unbind**. You can unbind a request throttling policy from a maximum of 1000 APIs at a time.

----End

11.6.2 Deleting an Access Control Policy

Scenario

You can delete access control policies you no longer require.

Prerequisites

You have created an access control policy.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Access Control**.

Step 3 Delete an access control policy using one of the following methods:

- In the Operation column of the access control policy you want to delete, click Delete.
- Click the name of the target access control policy, and click **Delete** in the upper right corner of the displayed access control policy details page.

- If an access control policy has been bound to APIs, unbind it and then delete it.
- To delete multiple access control policies, select the policies, and click **Delete**. You can delete a maximum of 1000 access control policies at a time.

Step 4 Click Yes.

----End

11.7 Environment Management

11.7.1 Creating an Environment and Environment Variable

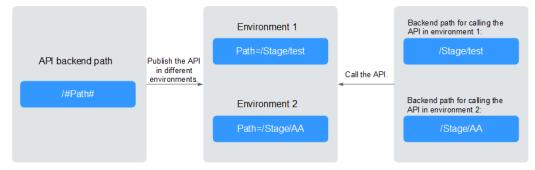
Scenario

An API can be called in different environments, such as production, testing, and development environments. RELEASE is the default environment provided by APIG. You can define environment variables to allow an API to be called in different environments.

Environment variables are manageable and specific to environments. You can create variables in different environments to call different backend services using the same API.

For variables you define during API creation, you must create corresponding variables and values. For example, variable **Path** is defined for an API, and two variables with the same name are created and assigned values **/Stage/test** and **/Stage/AA** in environments 1 and 2, respectively. If the API is published and called in environment 1, the path **/Stage/test** is used. If the API is published and called in environment 2, the path **/Stage/AA** is used.

Figure 11-28 Environment variables



You can create a maximum of 50 variables for an API group in each environment.

Prerequisites

You have **created an API group**.

Creating an Environment

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Environments**.
- **Step 3** Click **Create Environment**, and set the parameters listed in **Table 11-21**.

Figure 11-29 Creating an environment

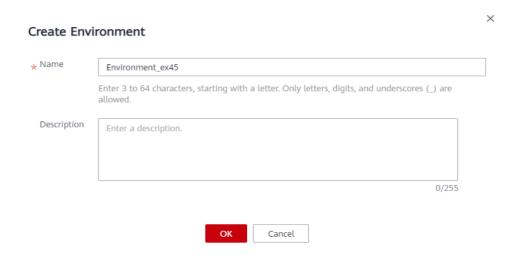


Table 11-21 Environment information

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| Name | Environment name. |
| Description | Description of the environment. |

Step 4 Click OK.

After the environment is created, it is displayed in the environment list.

----End

Accessing an Environment

You can call an API in the RELEASE environment by using a RESTful API. To access the API in other environments, add the **X-Stage** header to the request to specify an environment name. For example, add **X-Stage:DEVELOP** to the request header to access an API in the **DEVELOP** environment.

□ NOTE

APIG does not support API debugging using environment variables.

Creating an Environment Variable

- **Step 1** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **API Groups**.
- **Step 2** Create a variable. You can use one of the following methods:
 - Click the name of the target API group, and click the Variables tab on the displayed API group details page.
 - In the Operation column of the target API group, choose More > Manage Variable.
- **Step 3** Select an environment from the **Environment** drop-down list, and click **Create Variable**.
- **Step 4** Set the parameters listed in **Table 11-22**.

Figure 11-30 Creating an environment variable

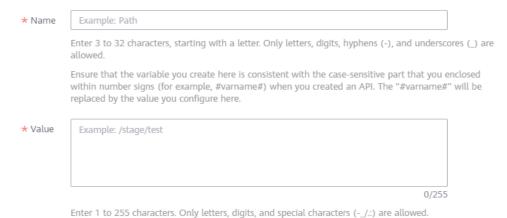


Table 11-22 Parameters for creating an environment variable

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|--|
| Name | Name of the variable you want to create. Ensure that the name is the same as the name of the variable defined for the API. |
| Value | The path to be used in the selected environment. |

Step 5 Click OK.

MOTE

If a variable is not needed, click **Delete** in the row containing the variable to delete it. Environment variable names and values will be displayed in plain text in API requests. Do not include sensitive information in the variable names and values.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

After creating an environment and variable, **publish APIs** in the environment so that they can be called by API callers.

Creating an Environment and Environment Variable by Calling an API

You can also create an environment and environment variable by calling an API provided by APIG. For details, see the following references:

Creating an Environment

Creating an Environment Variable

FAQ About Environment Variables

Can I Invoke Different Backend Services by Publishing an API in Different Environments?

11.7.2 Deleting an Environment

Scenario

You can delete environments you no longer require.

Prerequisites

You have created an environment.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Environments**.
- **Step 3** In the **Operation** column of the environment you want to delete, click **Delete**.

□ NOTE

You can delete an environment only if no APIs have been published in the environment.

Step 4 Click Yes.

----End

11.8 Signature Key Management

11.8.1 Creating and Using a Signature Key

Scenario

Signature keys are used by backend services to verify the identity of APIG.

A signature key consists of a key and secret, and can be used only after being bound to an API. When an API bound with a signature key is called, APIG adds

signature details to the API request. The backend service of the API signs the request in the same way, and verifies the identity of APIG by checking whether the signature is consistent with that in the **Authorization** header sent by APIG.

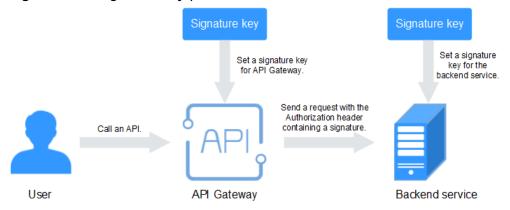
□ NOTE

Each API can only be bound with one signature key in a given environment, but each signature key can be bound to multiple APIs.

Procedure

- 1. Create a signature key on the APIG console.
- 2. Bind the signature key to an API.
- 3. APIG sends signed requests containing a signature in the **Authorization** header to the backend service. The backend service can use different programming languages (such as Java, Go, Python, JavaScript, C#, PHP, C++, C, and Android) to sign each request, and check whether the two signatures are consistent.

Figure 11-31 Signature key process flow



Creating a Signature Key

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Signature Keys**.
- Step 3 Click Create Signature Key.
- **Step 4** In the **Create Signature Key** dialog box, set the parameters listed in **Table 11-23**.

Create Signature Key

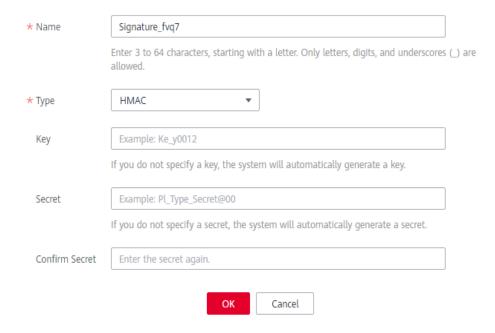


Table 11-23 Parameters for creating a signature key

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------|--|
| Name | Signature key name. |
| Туре | Type of the signature key. Select HMAC or Basic . This parameter is available only for dedicated gateways. |
| Key | Combined with Secret to form a signature key pair. |
| | If you set Type to HMAC , enter the key of the key pair used for hash-based message authentication code (HMAC) authentication. |
| | If you set Type to Basic , enter the username used for basic authentication. |
| Secret | Combined with Key to form a signature key pair. |
| | If you set Type to HMAC , enter the secret of the key pair used for HMAC authentication. |
| | If you set Type to Basic , enter the password used for basic authentication. |
| Confirm Secret | Enter the secret again. |

Step 5 Click OK.

----End

Binding a Signature Key to an API

- **Step 1** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Signature Keys**.
- **Step 2** Bind a signature key to an API. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the Operation column of the signature key to be bound to an API, click Bind to API.
 - Click the name of the target signature key.
- Step 3 Click Select API.
- **Step 4** Specify an API group, environment, and API name keyword to search for the desired API.
- Step 5 Select the API and click OK.

■ NOTE

If a signature key is no longer needed for an API, unbind it from the API.

----End

Verifying the Signing Result

Sign each backend request by following the instructions in **Signature Algorithm**, and check whether the backend signature is consistent with the signature in the **Authorization** header of the API request.

11.8.2 Deleting a Signature Key

Scenario

You can delete signature keys you no longer require.

Prerequisites

You have created a signature key.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **Signature Keys**.
- **Step 3** Delete a signature key. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the **Operation** column of the signature key you want to delete, click **Delete**.
 - Click the name of the target signature key, and click **Delete** in the upper right corner of the displayed signature key details page.

□ NOTE

If the signature key has been bound to any APIs, unbind it and then delete it.

Step 4 Click Yes.

----End

11.9 VPC Channel Management

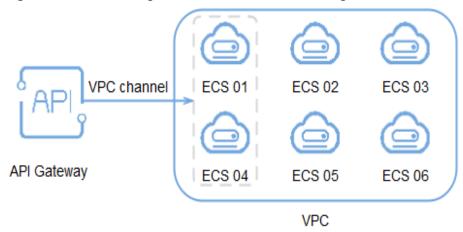
11.9.1 Creating a VPC Channel

Scenario

VPC channels allow services deployed in VPCs to be accessed through their subnets, lowering latency and balancing loads of backend services.

After creating a VPC channel, you can configure it for an API with an HTTP/HTTPS backend service. For example, six ECSs have been deployed in a VPC, and a VPC channel has been created to reach ECS 01 and ECS 04. APIG can access these two ECSs through the VPC channel.

Figure 11-32 Accessing ECSs in a VPC channel through APIG



□ NOTE

Prerequisites

- You have created a cloud server.
- You have the **VPC Administrator** permission.

Creating a Fast Channel

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **VPC Channels**.
- Step 3 Click Create VPC Channel, and set the parameters listed in Table 11-24.

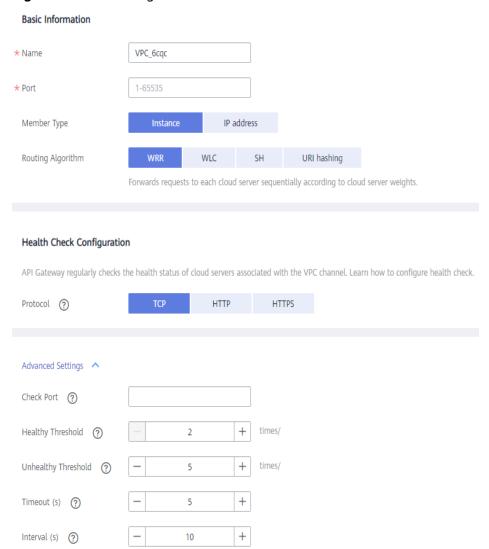


Figure 11-33 Creating a fast channel

Table 11-24 Parameters for creating a VPC channel

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------|--|
| Name | VPC channel name. |
| Port | The host port of the VPC channel, that is, the port of the backend service. Range: 1–65535. |
| Member Type | Select a method that you want to use to specify servers for the VPC channel. The member type is a one-time configuration and cannot be changed after you create the VPC channel. |
| | Instance: Select cloud servers. |
| | IP address: Specify cloud server IP addresses. |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|---|
| Routing Algorithm | The algorithm to be used to forward requests to cloud servers you select. The following routing algorithms are available: • WRR: weighted round robin • WLC: weighted least connection • SH: source hashing • URI hashing |
| Protocol | The protocol used to perform health checks on cloud servers associated with the VPC channel. Options: TCP HTTP HTTPS Default value: TCP. |
| Path | The destination path for health checks. Set this parameter only when Protocol is not set to TCP . |
| Check Port | The destination port for health checks. By default, the port of the VPC channel will be used. |
| Healthy Threshold | The number of consecutive successful checks required for a cloud server to be considered healthy. Range: 2–10. Default value: 2. |
| Unhealthy Threshold | The number of consecutive failed checks required for a cloud server to be considered unhealthy. Range: 2–10. Default value: 5. |
| Timeout (s) | The timeout used to determine whether a health check has failed. Unit: s. Range: 2–30. Default value: 5 . |
| Interval (s) | The interval between consecutive checks. Unit: s. Range: 5–300. Default value: 10 . |
| Response Codes | The HTTP codes used to check for a successful response from a target. Set this parameter only when Protocol is not set to TCP . |

- Step 4 Click Next.
- **Step 5** Click **Select Cloud Server**.
- **Step 6** Select the cloud servers you want to add, and click **OK**.

■ NOTE

When using the shared gateway, to ensure a successful health check and service availability, configure the security groups of the cloud servers to allow access from 100.125.0.0/16.

Step 7 Click Finish.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

Create an API for backend services deployed in a VPC to balance loads.

11.9.2 Deleting a VPC Channel

Scenario

You can delete VPC channels you no longer require.

■ NOTE

VPC channels that are currently in use by published APIs cannot be deleted.

Prerequisites

You have created a VPC channel.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **VPC Channels**.
- **Step 3** Delete a VPC channel. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the Operation column of the VPC channel you want to delete, click Delete.
 - Click the name of the target VPC channel, and click **Delete** in the upper right corner of the displayed VPC channel details page.

Step 4 Click Yes.

----End

11.9.3 Editing Health Check Configurations

Scenario

You can modify the health check configurations of a VPC channel to meet service requirements.

Prerequisites

You have created a VPC channel.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **VPC Channels**.
- Step 3 Click the name of the target VPC channel,
- Step 4 Click the Health Check tab.
- Step 5 Click Edit Health Check.
- **Step 6** In the **Edit Health Check Configuration** dialog box, modify the parameters listed in **Table 11-25**.

Edit Health Check Configuration

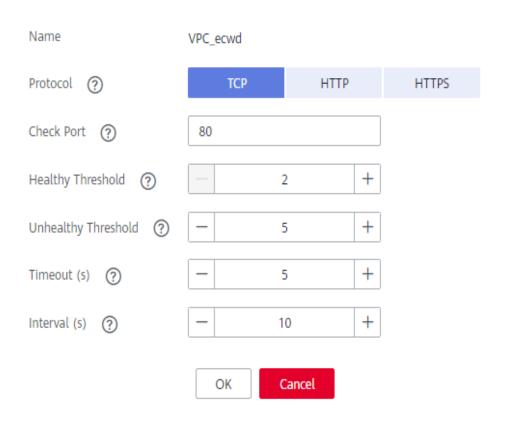


Table 11-25 Health check configurations

| Parameter | Description | |
|-----------|---|--|
| Protocol | The protocol used to perform health checks on cloud servers associated with the VPC channel. Options: | |
| | • TCP | |
| | • HTTP | |
| | • HTTPS | |
| | Default value: TCP . | |

| Parameter | Description |
|------------------------|--|
| Path | The destination path for health checks. Set this parameter only when Protocol is not set to TCP . |
| Check Port | The destination port for health checks. By default, the port of the VPC channel will be used. |
| Healthy Threshold | The number of consecutive successful checks required for a cloud server to be considered healthy. Range: 2–10. Default value: 2. |
| Unhealthy Threshold | The number of consecutive failed checks required for a cloud server to be considered unhealthy. Range: 2–10. Default value: 5. |
| Timeout (s) | The timeout used to determine whether a health check has failed. Unit: s. Range: 2–30. Default value: 5 . |
| Interval (s) | The interval between consecutive checks. Unit: s. Range: 5–300. Default value: 10 . |
| Response Codes | The HTTP codes used to check for a successful response from a target. Set this parameter only when Protocol is not set to TCP . |

Step 7 Click OK.

----End

11.9.4 Editing Cloud Server Configurations of a VPC Channel

Scenario

You can add or remove cloud servers and edit cloud server weights for VPC channels to meet service requirements.

Prerequisites

You have created a VPC channel.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **VPC Channels**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target VPC channel.
- **Step 4** Click the **Cloud Servers** tab.

Step 5 Add or remove cloud servers and edit cloud server weights.

- Adding cloud servers
 - a. Click Select Cloud Server.
 - b. Select the cloud servers you want to add, set cloud server weights, and click **OK**.

∩ NOTE

To ensure a successful health check and service availability, configure the security groups of the backend cloud servers to allow access from 100.125.0.0/16.

- Removing cloud servers
 - a. In the **Operation** column of the cloud servers you want to remove, click **Remove**.
 - b. Click Yes.
- Editing the weight of a cloud server
 - a. In the **Weight** column of the target cloud server, click \angle .
 - b. Change the weight and click $\stackrel{\checkmark}{}$.
- Editing the weights of multiple cloud servers
 - a. Select the cloud servers to be edited, and click Edit Weight.
 - b. Change the weights of the selected cloud servers, and click **OK**.

----End

11.10 Custom Authorizers

11.10.1 Creating a Custom Authorizer

Scenario

APIG supports custom authentication of both frontend and backend requests.

- Frontend custom authentication: If you already have an authentication system, you can configure it in a function and then create a custom authorizer by using the function to authenticate API requests.
- Backend custom authentication: You can create a custom authorizer to authenticate requests for different backend services, eliminating the need to customize APIs for different authentication systems and simplifying API development. You only need to create a function-based custom authorizer in APIG to connect to the backend authentication system.

Ⅲ NOTE

Custom authentication is implemented using FunctionGraph and not supported if FunctionGraph is unavailable in the selected region.

For details about custom authentication, see the API Gateway Developer Guide.

The following figure shows the process of calling APIs through custom authentication.

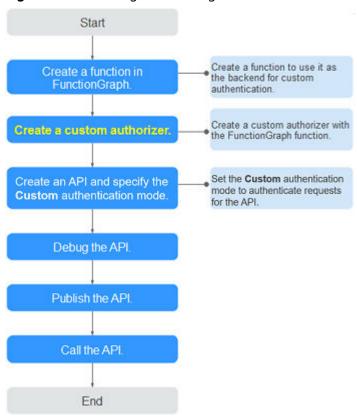


Figure 11-34 Calling APIs through custom authentication

Prerequisites

- You have created a function in FunctionGraph.
- You have the **FunctionGraph Administrator** permission.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** Choose **API Publishing > Custom Authorizers**, and click **Create Custom Authorizer**.
- **Step 3** Set the parameters listed in **Table 11-26**.

Create Custom Authorizer

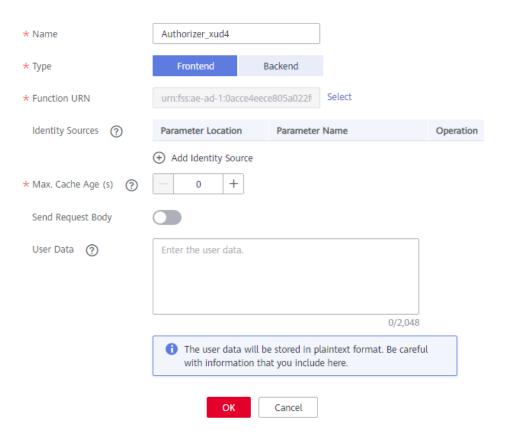


Table 11-26 Parameters for creating a custom authorizer

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------------------|---|
| Name | Authorizer name. |
| Туре | Frontend: Authenticates access to APIs. Backend: Authenticates access to backend services. |
| Function URN | Select a FunctionGraph function. |
| Identity Sources | Request parameters for authentication. You can add headers and query strings. Header names are case-insensitive. |
| | This parameter is mandatory only if you set Type to Frontend , and Max. Cache Age (s) is greater than 0 . When the cache is used, this parameter is used as a search criterion to query authentication results. |
| Max. Cache Age (s) | The time for caching authentication results. Value 0 means that authentication results will not be cached. The maximum value is 3600 . |

| Parameter | Description |
|-------------------------|--|
| Send Request Body | Determine whether to send the body of each API request to the authentication function. If you enable this option, the request body will be sent to the authentication function in the same way as the headers and query strings. |
| User Data | Customized request parameters to be used together with Identity Sources when APIG invokes a function. |

Step 4 Click OK.

----End

11.10.2 Deleting a Custom Authorizer

Scenario

You can delete custom authorizers you no longer require.

Ⅲ NOTE

- Custom authentication is implemented using FunctionGraph and not supported if FunctionGraph is unavailable in the selected region.
- Custom authorizers that have been configured for APIs cannot be deleted.

Prerequisites

You have created a custom authorizer.

Procedure

- **Step 1** Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** Choose **API Publishing** > **Custom Authorizers**, and click **Delete** in the row containing the custom authorizer you want to delete.

Step 3 Click Yes.

----End

11.11 Monitoring

11.11.1 APIG Metrics

Introduction

This section describes the metrics that APIG reports to the Cloud Eye service. You can view metrics and alarms by using the Cloud Eye console.

Namespace

Shared gateway: SYS.APIG

Metrics

Table 11-27 Shared gateway metrics

| ID | Name | Description | Value Range | Monitored Object | Monitoring Interval (Minute) |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---|-------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| avg_latency | Average Latency | Average latency of the API. | ≥ 0 Unit: ms | API | 1 |
| input_throug hput | Incoming Traffic | Incoming traffic of the API. | ≥ 0 Unit: Byte, KB, MB, or GB | API | 1 |
| max_latency | Maximum Latency | Maximum latency of the API. | ≥ 0 Unit: ms | API | 1 |
| output_throu ghput | Outgoing Traffic | Outgoing traffic of the API. | ≥ 0 Unit: Byte, KB, MB, or GB | API | 1 |
| req_count | Requests | Number of times that the API has been called. | ≥ 0 | API | 1 |
| req_count_2x x | 2xx Responses | Number of times that the API returns a 2xx response. | ≥ 0 | API | 1 |
| req_count_4x x | 4xx Errors | Number of times that the API returns a 4xx error. | ≥ 0 | API | 1 |
| req_count_5x x | 5xx Errors | Number of times that the API returns a 5xx error. | ≥ 0 | API | 1 |
| req_count_er ror | Total Errors | Total number of errors returned by the API. | ≥ 0 | API | 1 |

Dimension

Table 11-28 Shared gateway monitoring dimension

| Кеу | Value |
|--------|-------|
| api_id | API |

11.11.2 Creating Alarm Rules

Scenario

You can create alarm rules to monitor the status of your APIs.

An alarm rule consists of a rule name, monitored objects, metrics, alarm thresholds, monitoring interval, and notification.

Prerequisites

An API has been called.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target API.
- **Step 4** On the **Dashboard** tab page, click **View Metric** to access the Cloud Eye console. Then create an alarm rule. For details, see **Creating an Alarm Rule**.

----End

11.11.3 Viewing Metrics

Scenario

Cloud Eye monitors the status of your APIs and allows you to view their metrics.

Prerequisites

You have created an API group and API.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Publishing** > **APIs**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target API.

API metrics are displayed on the **Dashboard** tab page.

Step 4 Click **View Metric** to view more metrics on the Cloud Eye console.

Ⅲ NOTE

The monitoring data is retained for two days. To retain the data for a longer period, save it to an OBS bucket.

----End

11.12 App Management

11.12.1 Creating an App and Obtaining Authorization

Scenario

For an API that uses app authentication, you can create an app and use the app and its ID and key pair (AppKey and AppSecret) to call the API. You can use an app to call an API only after you bind the app to the API. When you call the API, replace the key pair in the SDK with your own key pair so that APIG can authenticate your identity. For details about app authentication, see **Developer Guide**.

■ NOTE

• If the authentication mode of the target API has been set to **None** or **IAM**, you do not need to create apps to call this API.

Creating an App

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Calling > Apps**.
- **Step 3** Click **Create App**, and configure the app information.

Table 11-29 App information

| Parameter | Description | |
|-------------|-------------------------|--|
| Name | App name. | |
| Description | Description of the app. | |

Step 4 Click OK.

After the app is created, its name and ID are displayed in the app list.

Step 5 Click the app name, and view the AppKey and AppSecret on the app details page.

Figure 11-35 App details



----End

Binding an App to an API

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Calling > Apps**.
- **Step 3** Bind an app to an API. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the Operation column of the app, click Bind to API, and then click Select API.
 - Click the name of the target app, and click **Select API**.
- **Step 4** Select an environment, select an API, and click **OK**.

After the binding is complete, you can view the API on the app details page.

- Only APIs using app authentication can be bound with apps.
- An app can be bound to multiple APIs that use app authentication, and each such API can be bound with multiple apps.
- To debug an API to which the app is bound, click **Debug** in the row containing the API.

----End

Follow-Up Operations

You can call APIs using different authentication methods. For details, see **Calling APIs**.

11.12.2 Deleting an App

Scenario

You can delete apps you no longer require.

Prerequisites

You have created an app.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Calling > Apps**.
- **Step 3** Delete an app. You can use one of the following methods:
 - In the **Operation** column of the app you want to delete, click **Delete**.
 - Click the name of the target app, and click **Delete App** in the upper right corner of the displayed app details page.

If the app has been bound to any APIs, you must unbind the app and then delete it.

Step 4 Click Yes.

----End

11.12.3 Resetting the AppSecret of an App

Scenario

You can reset the AppSecret of an app. The AppKey is unique and cannot be reset. When you reset the AppSecret, it becomes invalid and APIs bound to the app cannot be called. To enable API calls for that app again, you will need to update the AppSecret of the app you use.

Prerequisites

You have created an app.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Calling > Apps**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target app.
- **Step 4** In the upper right corner of the displayed app details page, click **Reset AppSecret**.
- Step 5 Click Yes.

----End

11.12.4 Adding an AppCode for Simple Authentication

Scenario

AppCodes are identity credentials of an app used to call APIs in simple authentication mode. In this mode, the **X-Apig-AppCode** parameter (whose value is an AppCode on the app details page) is added to the HTTP request header for quick response. APIG verifies only the AppCode and the request content does not need to be signed.

When an API is called using app authentication and simple authentication is enabled for the API, AppKey and AppSecret can be used to sign and verify the API request. AppCode can also be used for simple authentication.

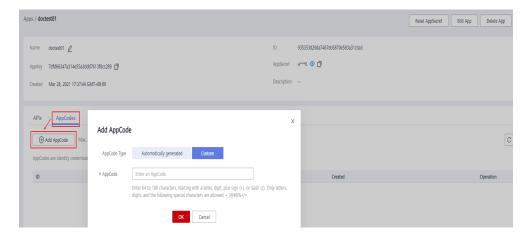
- For security purposes, simple authentication only supports API calls over HTTPS.
- You can create a maximum of five AppCodes for each app.

Prerequisites

You have created an app.

Generating an AppCode

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Calling > Apps**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target app.
- **Step 4** Click the **AppCodes** tab.
- **Step 5** Click **Add AppCode** to generate an AppCode. It can be automatically generated or customized.



----End

Using AppCode for Simple Authentication of API Requests

Step 1 When creating an API, set **Security Authentication** to **App** and enable **Simple Authentication**.

After you enable simple authentication for an existing API, you need to publish the API again to make the configuration take effect.

Step 2 Bind an app to the API.



Step 3 When sending a request, add the **X-Apig-AppCode** parameter to the request header and omit the request signature.

For example, when using curl, add the **X-Apig-AppCode** parameter to the request header and set the parameter value to the **generated AppCode**.

curl -X GET "https://api.exampledemo.com/testapi" -H "content-type: application/json" -H "host: api.exampledemo.com" -H "X-Apig-AppCode: xhrJVJKABSOxc7d*********FZL4gSHEXkCMQC"

----End

11.12.5 Viewing API Details

Scenario

You can view the details of an API to which an app has been bound.

Prerequisites

- You have created an app.
- The app has been bound to an API.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Calling** > **Apps**.
- **Step 3** Click the name of the target app.
- **Step 4** Click the name of the target API to view its details.

----End

11.13 SDKs

APIG supports API authentication based on IAM, apps, and custom authorizers. You can also choose not to authenticate API requests. For details about the differences between the four modes and how to select one, see **Calling APIs**.

This section describes how to download SDKs and view related instructions. For details about IAM authentication, see **Using IAM Authentication to Call APIs**.

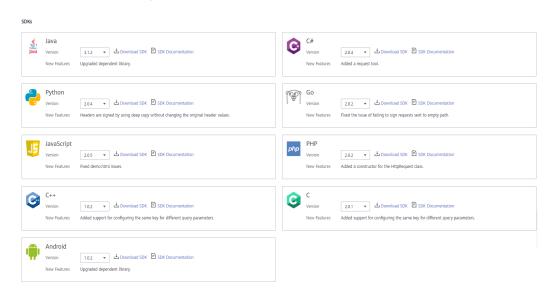
Scenario

SDKs are used when you call APIs through app authentication. Download SDKs and related documentation and then call APIs by following the instructions in the documentation.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console and click
- **Step 2** Choose **Help Center**.
- Step 3 Click SDK Process Flow.
- **Step 4** Click **Download SDK** of the desired language.

To view the support guide, click **SDK Documentation**.



----End

11.14 Purchased APIs

Scenario

In the shared gateway, you can view the purchased APIs and debug the APIs to check whether they are running properly.

Purchased APIs must be called using app authentication.

Prerequisites

You have purchased APIs through KooGallery.

Procedure

- Step 1 Access the shared gateway console.
- **Step 2** In the navigation pane, choose **API Calling** > **Purchased APIs**.

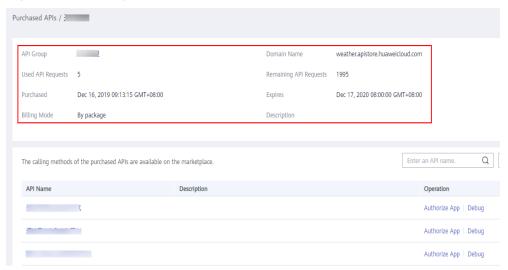
Figure 11-36 Purchased API group



Step 3 Click the name of the target API group.

Details of the API group and purchased APIs under the group are displayed.

Figure 11-37 API group details



- **Step 4** In the **Operation** column of the desired API, click **Debug**.
- **Step 5** On the left side, set the API request parameters listed in **Table 11-30**. On the right side, view the API request and response information after you click **Send Request**.

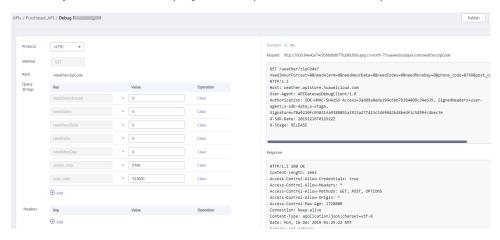
Table 11-30 Parameters for debugging an API

| Parameter | Description |
|--------------------|--|
| Protocol | You can modify this parameter only if you have set Protocol to HTTP&HTTPS for the API. |
| Method | You can modify this parameter only if you have set Method to ANY for the API. |
| Suffix | You can modify this parameter only if you have set Matching to Prefix match for the API. |
| Path Parameters | You can modify this parameter only if the value of Path contains braces ({}). |
| Headers | HTTP headers and values. |
| Query Strings | Query string parameters and values. |

| Parameter | Description |
|-----------|---|
| Body | You can modify this parameter only if you have set Method to PATCH , POST , or PUT for the API. |

Step 6 After setting request parameters, click **Send Request**.

The **Response** section displays the response of the API request.



Step 7 You can send more requests with different parameters and values to verify the API.

----End

11.15 Calling Published APIs

11.15.1 Calling APIs

Obtaining APIs and Documentation

Before calling APIs, obtain the request information from the API provider, including the access domain name, protocol, method, path, and request parameters.

Obtain APIs: from your company or from a partner

Obtain related documentation

 For APIs obtained from Huawei Cloud, obtain documentation from the Help Center.

The authentication information to be obtained varies with the API authentication mode.

- App authentication:
 - Signature authentication: Obtain the key and secret (or client AppKey and AppSecret) of the app authorized for the API from the API provider as well as the SDK for calling the API.
 - Simple authentication: Obtain the AppCode of the app authorized for the API from the API provider.

- Other authentication modes: Obtain the key and secret (or client AppKey and AppSecret) of the app authorized for the API from the API provider.
- IAM authentication: The account credential (token or AK/SK obtained with the account and password) obtained on the cloud service platform is used for authentication. If the AK/SK is used for authentication, you also need to obtain the SDK from the API provider for calling the API.
- Custom authentication: Obtain the custom authentication information to be carried in the request parameters from the API provider.
- None: No authentication information is required.

Calling an API

□ NOTE

This section describes only the configuration of the request path and authentication parameters. For other parameters, such as timeout and SSL, configure them as required. To avoid service loss due to incorrect parameters, configure them by referring to the industry standards.

Step 1 Set the request path.

| Scenario | Request Parameter Configuration |
|---|--|
| Calling an API with a domain name | Call the API using the subdomain name allocated to the API group or a domain name bound to the group. No additional configuration is required. |
| Calling an API in a non- DEFAULT group with an IP address | To use an IP address to call an API that does not use app authentication in a non-DEFAULT group, add the header parameter host . |

Step 2 Set the authentication parameters.

| Authentication Mode | Request Parameter Configuration |
|--|--|
| App authentication (with a signature) | Use the SDK to sign API requests. For details, see Calling APIs Through App Authentication. |
| App authentication (through simple authentication) | Add the header parameter X-Apig-AppCode and set the parameter value to the AppCode obtained in Obtaining APIs and Documentation. For details, see Getting Started. |
| IAM authentication (with a token) | Obtain a token from the cloud platform and carry the token in API requests for authentication. For details, see Token Authentication. |
| IAM authentication (with AK/SK) | Use an SDK to sign API requests. For details, see AK/SK Authentication. |

| Authentication Mode | Request Parameter Configuration |
|-----------------------|--|
| Custom authentication | Carry authentication information in API request parameters for authentication. |
| None | Call APIs without authentication. |

----End

11.15.2 Response Headers

The following table describes the response headers that APIG adds to the response returned when an API is called.

X-Apig-Mode: debug indicates API debugging information.

| Response Header | Description | Remarks |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
| X-Request-Id | Request ID. | Returned for all valid requests. |
| X-Apig- Latency | Duration from the time when APIG receives a request to the time when the backend returns a message header. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug . |
| X-Apig- Upstream- Latency | Duration from the time when APIG sends a request to the backend to the time when the backend returns a message header. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and the backend type is not Mock. |
| X-Apig- RateLimit-api | API request limit information. Example: remain:9,limit:10,time:10 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and a limit has been configured for the number of times the API can be called. |
| X-Apig- RateLimit- user | User request limit information. Example: remain:9,limit:10,time:10 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and a limit has been configured for the number of times the API can be called by a user. |
| X-Apig- RateLimit-app | App request limit information. Example: remain:9,limit:10,time:10 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and a limit has been configured for the number of times the API can be called by an app. |

| Response Header | Description | Remarks |
|-------------------------------------|--|--|
| X-Apig- RateLimit-ip | IP address request limit information. Example: remain:9,limit:10,time:10 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug and a limit has been configured for the number of times the API can be called by an IP address. |
| X-Apig- RateLimit-api- allenv | Default API request limit information. Example: remain:199,limit:200,tim e:1 second. | Returned only when the request header contains X-Apig-Mode: debug . |

11.15.3 Error Codes

Table 11-31 lists the error codes that you may encounter when calling APIs. If an error code starting with **APIGW** is returned after you call an API, rectify the fault by referring to the instructions provided in **Error Codes**.

■ NOTE

- For details about the error codes that may occur when you manage APIs, see Error Codes.
- If an error occurs when you use APIG, find the error message and description in the following table according to the error code, for example, APIG.0101. The error messages are subject to change without prior notice.

Table 11-31 Error codes

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|--|--|
| APIG.01 01 | The API does not exist or has not been published in the environment. | 404 | The API does not exist or has not been published in the environment. | Check whether the domain name, method, and path are consistent with those of the registered API. Check whether the API has been published. If it has been published in a non-production environment, check whether the X-Stage header in the request is the environment name. Check whether the domain name used to call the API has been bound to the group to which the API belongs. |
| APIG.01 01 | The API does not exist. | 404 | The API request method does not exist. | Check whether the API request method is the same as the method defined by the API. |
| APIG.01 03 | The backend does not exist. | 500 | The backend service was not found. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.01 04 | The plug-ins do not exist. | 500 | No plug-in configurations were found. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.01 05 | The backend configurations do not exist. | 500 | No backend configurations were found. | Contact technical support. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|------------------------------|----------------------------|--|--|
| APIG.01 06 | Orchestration error. | 400 | An orchestration error occurred. | Check whether the frontend and backend parameters of the API are correct. |
| APIG.02 01 | API request error. | 400 | Invalid request parameters. | Set valid request parameters. |
| APIG.02 01 | Request entity too large. | 413 | The request body exceeds 12 MB. | Reduce the size of the request body. |
| APIG.02 01 | Request URI too large. | 414 | The request URI exceeds 32 KB. | Reduce the size of the request URI. |
| APIG.02 01 | Request headers too large. | 494 | The request headers are too large because one of them exceeds 32 KB or the total length exceeds 128 KB. | Reduce the size of the request headers. |
| APIG.02 01 | Backend unavailable. | 502 | The backend service is unavailable. | Check whether the backend address configured for the API is accessible. |
| APIG.02 01 | Backend timeout. | 504 | The backend service has timed out. | Increase the timeout duration of the backend service or shorten the processing time. |
| APIG.02 01 | An unexpected error occurred | 500 | An internal error occurred. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.02 02 | Backend unavailable | 502 | The backend is unavailable. | Check whether the backend request protocol configured for the API is the same as the request protocol used by the backend service. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|---|----------------------------|--|--|
| APIG.02 03 | Backend timeout. | 504 | The backend service has timed out. | Increase the timeout of the backend service or shorten its processing time. |
| APIG.02 04 | SSL protocol is not supported: TLSv1.1 | 400 | The SSL protocol version is not supported. | Use a supported SSL protocol version. |
| APIG.03 01 | Incorrect IAM authentication information. | 401 | The IAM authentication details are incorrect. | Check the token by referring to Common Errors Related to IAM Authentication Information. |
| APIG.03 02 | The IAM user is not authorized to access the API. | 403 | The IAM user is not allowed to access the API. | Check whether the user is controlled by a blacklist or whitelist. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|---|--|
| APIG.03 03 | Incorrect app authentication information. | 401 | The app authentication details are incorrect. | Perform the following checks for app authentication: Check whether the request method, path, query parameters, and request body are consistent with those used for signing. Check whether the client time is correct. Check whether the signing code is correct by referring to Calling APIs Through App Authentication. In the case of AppCode-based simple authentication, check whether the request contains the X-Apig-AppCode header. |
| APIG.03 04 | The app is not authorized to access the API. | 403 | The app is not allowed to access the API. | Check whether the app has been authorized to access the API. |
| APIG.03 05 | Incorrect authentication information. | 401 | The authentication information is incorrect. | Check whether the authentication information is correct. |
| APIG.03 06 | API access denied. | 403 | Access to the API is not allowed. | Check whether you have been authorized to access the API. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|---|----------------------------|---|---|
| APIG.03 07 | The token must be updated. | 401 | The token needs to be updated. | Obtain a new token from IAM. |
| APIG.03 08 | The throttling threshold has been reached. | 429 | The throttling threshold has been reached. | Try again after the throttling resumes. If the number of subdomain requests per day is reached, bind an independent domain name to the API. |
| APIG.03 10 | The project is unavailable. | 403 | The project is currently unavailable. | Select another project and try again. |
| APIG.03 11 | Incorrect debugging authentication information. | 401 | The debugging authentication details are incorrect. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.04 01 | Unknown client IP address. | 403 | The client IP address cannot be identified. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.04 02 | The IP address is not authorized to access the API. | 403 | The IP address is not allowed to access the API. | Check whether the IP address is controlled by a blacklist or whitelist. |
| APIG.04 04 | Access to the backend IP address has been denied. | 403 | The backend IP address cannot be accessed. | Check whether the backend IP address or the IP address corresponding to the backend domain name is accessible. |
| APIG.05 01 | The app quota has been used up. | 405 | The app quota has been reached. | Increase the app quota. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|---|--|
| APIG.05 02 | The app has been frozen. | 405 | The app has been frozen. | Check whether your account balance is sufficient. |
| APIG.06 01 | Internal server error. | 500 | An internal error occurred. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 02 | Bad request. | 400 | Invalid request. | Check whether the request is valid. |
| APIG.06 05 | Domain name resolution failed. | 500 | Domain name resolution failed. | Check whether the domain name is correct and has been bound to a correct backend address. |
| APIG.06 06 | Failed to load the API configurations. | 500 | API configurations could not be loaded. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 07 | The following protocol is supported: {xxx} | 400 | The protocol is not supported. Only xxx is supported. xxx is subject to the actual value in the response. | Use HTTP or HTTPS to access the API. |
| APIG.06 08 | Failed to obtain the admin token. | 500 | The tenant details cannot be obtained. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 09 | The VPC backend does not exist. | 500 | The VPC backend service cannot be found. | Contact technical support. |

| Error Code | Error Message | HTTP Statu s Code | Description | Solution |
|---------------|--|----------------------------|---|---|
| APIG.06 10 | No backend available. | 502 | No backend services are available. | Check whether all backend services are available. For example, check whether the API calling information is consistent with the actual configuration. |
| APIG.06 11 | The backend port does not exist. | 500 | The backend port was not found. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.06 12 | An API cannot call itself. | 500 | An API cannot call itself. | Modify the backend configurations, and ensure that the number of layers the API is recursively called does not exceed 10. |
| APIG.06 13 | The IAM service is currently unavailable. | 503 | IAM is currently unavailable. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.07 05 | Backend signature calculation failed. | 500 | Backend signature calculation failed. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.08 02 | The IAM user is forbidden in the currently selected region | 403 | The IAM user is disabled in the current region. | Contact technical support. |
| APIG.10 09 | AppKey or AppSecret is invalid | 400 | The AppKey or AppSecret is invalid. | Check whether the AppKey or AppSecret in the request is correct. |

11.16 Key Operations Recorded by CTS

11.16.1 APIG operations that can be recorded by CTS

Enabling CTS

If you want to collect, record, or query operation logs for APIG in common scenarios such as security analysis, audit, and problem locating, **enable Cloud Trace Service (CTS)**.

CTS provides the following functions:

- Recording audit logs
- Querying audit logs
- Dumping audit logs
- Encrypting trace files
- Enabling notifications of key operations

Viewing Key Operations

With CTS, you can record operations associated with APIG for future query, audit, and backtracking.

Table 11-32 APIG operations that can be recorded by CTS

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|-------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------------|
| Creating an API group | ApiGroup | createApiGroup |
| Deleting an API group | ApiGroup | deleteApiGroup |
| Updating an API group | ApiGroup | updateApiGroup |
| Binding a domain name | ApiGroup | createDomainBinding |
| Change minimum TLS version | ApiGroup | modifySecureTransmis- sion |
| Unbinding a domain name | ApiGroup | relieveDomainBinding |
| Adding a domain certificate | ApiGroup | addDomainCertificate |
| Deleting a domain certificate | ApiGroup | deleteDomainCertificate |
| Creating an API | Api | createApi |
| Deleting an API | Api | deleteApi |
| Deleting multiple APIs | Api | batchDeleteApi |
| Updating an API | Api | updateApi |
| Publishing an API | Api | publishApi |
| Taking an API offline | Api | offlineApi |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|---|------------------|--------------------------|
| Publishing multiple APIs or taking APIs offline | Api | batchPublishOrOfflineApi |
| Switching API versions | Api | switchApiVersion |
| Taking an API version offline | Api | offlineApiByVersion |
| Debugging an API | Api | debugApi |
| Creating an environment | Environment | createEnvironment |
| Deleting an environment | Environment | deleteEnvironment |
| Updating an environment | Environment | updateEnvironment |
| Creating an environment variable | EnvVariable | createEnvVariable |
| Updating an environment variable | EnvVariable | updateEnvVariable |
| Deleting an environment variable | EnvVariable | deleteEnvVariable |
| Creating an app | Арр | createApp |
| Deleting an app | Арр | deleteApp |
| Updating an application | Арр | updateApp |
| Resetting AppSecret | Арр | resetAppSecret |
| Binding a client to an API | AppAuth | grantAuth |
| Unbinding a client from an API | AppAuth | relieveAuth |
| Creating a signature key | Signature | createSignature |
| Deleting a signature key | Signature | deleteSignature |
| Updating a signature key | Signature | updateSignature |
| Binding a signature key | SignatureBinding | createSignatureBinding |
| Unbinding a signature key | SignatureBinding | relieveSignatureBinding |
| Creating an access control policy | Acl | createAcl |
| Deleting an access control policy | Acl | deleteAcl |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|---|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Deleting access control policies | Acl | batchDeleteAcl |
| Updating an access control policy | Acl | updateAcl |
| Creating an access control blacklist | Acl | addAclValue |
| Deleting an access control blacklist | Acl | deleteAclValue |
| Binding an access control policy to an API | AclBinding | createAclBinding |
| Unbinding an access control policy from an API | AclBinding | relieveAclBinding |
| Unbinding multiple access control policies from APIs | AclBinding | batchRelieveAclBinding |
| Creating a request throttling policy | Throttle | createThrottle |
| Deleting a request throttling policy | Throttle | deleteThrottle |
| Deleting multiple request throttling policies | Throttle | batchDeleteThrottle |
| Updating a requesting throttling policy | Throttle | updateThrottle |
| Binding a request throttling policy | ThrottleBinding | createThrottleBinding |
| Unbinding a request throttling policy | ThrottleBinding | relieveThrottleBinding |
| Unbinding multiple request throttling policies | ThrottleBinding | batchRelieveThrottle- Binding |
| Creating an excluded request throttling configuration | ThrottleSpecial | createSpecialThrottle |
| Deleting an excluded request throttling configuration | ThrottleSpecial | deleteSpecialThrottle |

| Operation | Resource Type | Trace Name |
|---|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| Updating an excluded request throttling configuration | ThrottleSpecial | updateSpecialThrottle |
| Creating a load balance channel | Vpc | createVpc |
| Deleting a load balance channel | Vpc | deleteVpc |
| Updating a load balance channel | Vpc | updateVpc |
| Adding members to a load balance channel | Vpc | addVpcMember |
| Deleting members from a load balance channel | Vpc | deleteVpcMember |
| Exporting an API | Swagger | swaggerExportApi |
| Exporting multiple APIs | Swagger | swaggerExportApiList |
| Exporting all APIs in a group | Swagger | swaggerExportApi- ByGroup |
| Importing APIs to a new group | Swagger | swaggerlmportApiTo- NewGroup |
| Importing APIs to an existing group | Swagger | swaggerImportApiToEx- istGroup |
| Exporting all custom backends | Swagger | SwaggerExportLdApi |
| Importing custom backends | Swagger | SwaggerImportLdApi |
| Creating a custom authorizer | Authorizer | createAuthorizer |
| Deleting a custom authorizer | Authorizer | deleteAuthorizer |
| Updating a custom authorizer | Authorizer | updateAuthorizer |

Disabling CTS

Disable CTS by following the procedure in **Deleting a Tracker**.

11.16.2 Viewing Audit Logs

Query audit logs by following the procedure in **Querying Real-Time Traces**.

Figure 11-38 Viewing logs

